

Normes de fiabilité (version anglaise)

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Event Reporting
2. **Number:** EOP-004-4
3. **Purpose:** To improve the reliability of the Bulk Electric System by requiring the reporting of events by Responsible Entities.
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. **Functional Entities:** For the purpose of the Requirements and the EOP-004 Attachment 1 contained herein, the following Functional Entities will be collectively referred to as “Responsible Entity.”
 - 4.1.1. Reliability Coordinator
 - 4.1.2. Balancing Authority
 - 4.1.3. Transmission Owner
 - 4.1.4. Transmission Operator
 - 4.1.5. Generator Owner
 - 4.1.6. Generator Operator
 - 4.1.7. Distribution Provider
5. **Effective Date:** See the Implementation Plan for EOP-004-4.

B. Requirements and Measures

- R1.** Each Responsible Entity shall have an event reporting Operating Plan in accordance with EOP-004-4 Attachment 1 that includes the protocol(s) for reporting to the Electric Reliability Organization and other organizations (e.g., the Regional Entity, company personnel, the Responsible Entity’s Reliability Coordinator, law enforcement, or governmental authority). *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*
- M1.** Each Responsible Entity will have a dated event reporting Operating Plan that includes protocol(s) and each organization identified to receive an event report for event types specified in EOP-004-4 Attachment 1 and in accordance with the entity responsible for reporting.
- R2.** Each Responsible Entity shall report events specified in EOP-004-4 Attachment 1 to the entities specified per their event reporting Operating Plan by the later of 24 hours of recognition of meeting an event type threshold for reporting or by the end of the Responsible Entity’s next business day (4 p.m. local time will be considered the end of the business day). *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Assessment]*

- M2.** Each Responsible Entity will have as evidence of reporting an event to the entities specified per their event reporting Operating Plan either a copy of the completed EOP-004-4 Attachment 2 form or a DOE-OE-417 form; and some evidence of submittal (e.g., operator log or other operating documentation, voice recording, electronic mail message, or confirmation of facsimile) demonstrating that the event report was submitted by the later of 24 hours of recognition of meeting an event type threshold for reporting or by the end of the Responsible Entity’s next business day (4 p.m. local time will be considered the end of the business day).

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority:

“Compliance Enforcement Authority” means NERC or the Regional Entity, or any entity as otherwise designated by an Applicable Governmental Authority, in their respective roles of monitoring and/or enforcing compliance with mandatory and enforceable Reliability Standards in their respective jurisdictions.

1.2. Evidence Retention:

The Responsible Entity shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation:

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

- Each Responsible Entity shall retain the current Operating Plan plus each version issued since the last audit for Requirement R1, and Measure M1.
- Each Responsible Entity shall retain evidence of compliance since the last audit for Requirement R2 and Measure M2.

If a Responsible Entity is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved or for the duration specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Program

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Program” refers to the identification of the processes that will be used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of assessing performance or outcomes with the associated Reliability Standard.

Violation Severity Levels

R #	Violation Severity Levels			
	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1.	The Responsible Entity had an event reporting Operating Plan, but failed to include one applicable event type.	The Responsible Entity had an event reporting Operating Plan, but failed to include two applicable event types.	The Responsible Entity had an event reporting Operating Plan, but failed to include three applicable event types.	The Responsible Entity had an event reporting Operating Plan, but failed to include four or more applicable event types. OR The Responsible Entity failed to have an event reporting Operating Plan.
R2.	The Responsible Entity submitted an event report (e.g., written or verbal) to all required recipients up to 24 hours after the timing requirement for submittal. OR The Responsible Entity failed to submit an event report (e.g., written or verbal) to one entity identified in its event reporting Operating Plan within 24 hours or by the end of the next business day, as applicable.	The Responsible Entity submitted an event report (e.g., written or verbal) to all required recipients more than 24 hours but less than or equal to 48 hours after the timing requirement for submittal. OR The Responsible Entity failed to submit an event report (e.g., written or verbal) to two entities identified in its event reporting Operating Plan within 24 hours or by	The Responsible Entity submitted an event report (e.g., written or verbal) to all required recipients more than 48 hours but less than or equal to 72 hours after the timing requirement for submittal. OR The Responsible Entity failed to submit an event report (e.g., written or verbal) to three entities identified in its event reporting Operating Plan within 24 hours or by	The Responsible Entity submitted an event report (e.g., written or verbal) to all required recipients more than 72 hours after the timing requirement for submittal. OR The Responsible Entity failed to submit an event report (e.g., written or verbal) to four or more entities identified in its event reporting Operating Plan within 24 hours or by the

R #	Violation Severity Levels			
	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
		the end of the next business day, as applicable.	the end of the next business day, as applicable.	end of the next business day, as applicable. OR The Responsible Entity failed to submit a report for an event in EOP-004-4 Attachment 1.

D. Regional Variances

None.

E. Associated Documents

[Link](#) to the Implementation Plan and other important associated documents.

EOP-004 - Attachment 1: Reportable Events

NOTE: Under certain adverse conditions (e.g. severe weather, multiple events) it may not be possible to report the damage caused by an event and issue a written event report within the timing in the standard. In such cases, the affected Responsible Entity shall notify parties per Requirement R2 and provide as much information as is available at the time of the notification. Submit reports to the ERO via one of the following: e-mail: systemawareness@nerc.net, Facsimile 404-446-9770 or Voice: 404-446-9780, select Option 1.

Submit EOP-004 Attachment 2 (or DOE-OE-417) pursuant to Requirements R1 and R2.

Rationale for Attachment 1:

System-wide voltage reduction to maintain the continuity of the BES: The TOP is operating the system and is the only entity that would implement system-wide voltage reduction.

Complete loss of Interpersonal Communication and Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability at a BES control center: To align EOP-004-4 with COM-001-2.1. COM-001-2.1 defined Interpersonal Communication for the NERC Glossary of Terms as: “Any medium that allows two or more individuals to interact, consult, or exchange information.” The NERC Glossary of Terms defines Alternative Interpersonal Communication as: “Any Interpersonal Communication that is able to serve as a substitute for, and does not utilize the same infrastructure (medium) as, Interpersonal Communication used for day-to-day operation.”

Complete loss of monitoring or control capability at a BES control center: Language revisions to: “Complete loss of monitoring or control capability at a BES control center for 30 continuous minutes or more” provides clarity to the “Threshold for Reporting” and better aligns with the ERO Event Analysis Process.

Event Type	Entity with Reporting Responsibility	Threshold for Reporting
Damage or destruction of a Facility	RC, BA, TOP	Damage or destruction of a Facility within its Reliability Coordinator Area, Balancing Authority Area or Transmission Operator Area that results in action(s) to avoid a BES Emergency.

Event Type	Entity with Reporting Responsibility	Threshold for Reporting
Damage or destruction of its Facility	TO, TOP, GO, GOP, DP	Damage or destruction of its Facility that results from actual or suspected intentional human action. It is not necessary to report theft unless it degrades normal operation of its Facility.
Physical threats to its Facility	TO, TOP, GO, GOP, DP	Physical threat to its Facility excluding weather or natural disaster related threats, which has the potential to degrade the normal operation of the Facility. OR Suspicious device or activity at its Facility.
Physical threats to its BES control center	RC, BA, TOP	Physical threat to its BES control center, excluding weather or natural disaster related threats, which has the potential to degrade the normal operation of the control center. OR Suspicious device or activity at its BES control center.
Public appeal for load reduction resulting from a BES Emergency	BA	Public appeal for load reduction to maintain continuity of the BES.
System-wide voltage reduction resulting from a BES Emergency	TOP	System-wide voltage reduction of 3% or more.
Firm load shedding resulting from a BES Emergency	Initiating RC, BA, or TOP	Firm load shedding \geq 100 MW (manual or automatic).

Event Type	Entity with Reporting Responsibility	Threshold for Reporting
BES Emergency resulting in voltage deviation on a Facility	TOP	A voltage deviation of \geq 10% of nominal voltage sustained for \geq 15 continuous minutes.
Uncontrolled loss of firm load resulting from a BES Emergency	BA, TOP, DP	Uncontrolled loss of firm load for \geq 15 minutes from a single incident: \geq 300 MW for entities with previous year's peak demand \geq 3,000 MW OR \geq 200 MW for all other entities
System separation (islanding)	RC, BA, TOP	Each separation resulting in an island \geq 100 MW
Generation loss	BA	Total generation loss, within one minute, of: \geq 2,000 MW in the Eastern, Western, or Quebec Interconnection OR \geq 1,400 MW in the ERCOT Interconnection Generation loss will be used to report Forced Outages not weather patterns or fuel supply unavailability for dispersed power producing resources.

Event Type	Entity with Reporting Responsibility	Threshold for Reporting
Complete loss of off-site power to a nuclear generating plant (grid supply)	TO, TOP	Complete loss of off-site power (LOOP) affecting a nuclear generating station per the Nuclear Plant Interface Requirements
Transmission loss	TOP	Unexpected loss within its area, contrary to design, of three or more BES Facilities caused by a common disturbance (excluding successful automatic reclosing).
Unplanned evacuation of its BES control center	RC, BA, TOP	Unplanned evacuation from its BES control center facility for 30 continuous minutes or more.
Complete loss of Interpersonal Communication and Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability at its staffed BES control center	RC, BA, TOP	Complete loss of Interpersonal Communication and Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability affecting its staffed BES control center for 30 continuous minutes or more.
Complete loss of monitoring or control capability at its staffed BES control center	RC, BA, TOP	Complete loss of monitoring or control capability at its staffed BES control center for 30 continuous minutes or more.

EOP-004 - Attachment 2: Event Reporting Form

EOP-004 Attachment 2: Event Reporting Form			
Use this form to report events. The Electric Reliability Organization will accept the DOE OE-417 form in lieu of this form if the entity is required to submit an OE-417 report. Submit reports to the ERO via one of the following: e-mail: systemawareness@nerc.net , Facsimile 404-446-9770 or voice: 404-446-9780, Option 1. Also submit to other applicable organizations per Requirement R1 "... (e.g., the Regional Entity, company personnel, the Responsible Entity's Reliability Coordinator, law enforcement, or Applicable Governmental Authority)."			
Task	Comments		
1.	Entity filing the report include: Company name: Name of contact person: Email address of contact person: Telephone Number: Submitted by (name):		
2.	Date and Time of recognized event. Date: (mm/dd/yyyy) Time: (hh:mm) Time/Zone:		
3.	Did the event originate in your system? Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown <input type="checkbox"/>		
Event Identification and Description:			
4.	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px;"> (Check applicable box) <input type="checkbox"/> Damage or destruction of a Facility <input type="checkbox"/> Physical threat to its Facility <input type="checkbox"/> Physical threat to its BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> BES Emergency: <input type="checkbox"/> firm load shedding <input type="checkbox"/> public appeal for load reduction <input type="checkbox"/> System-wide voltage reduction <input type="checkbox"/> voltage deviation on a Facility <input type="checkbox"/> uncontrolled loss of firm load <input type="checkbox"/> System separation (islanding) <input type="checkbox"/> Generation loss <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of off-site power to a nuclear generating plant (grid supply) <input type="checkbox"/> Transmission loss <input type="checkbox"/> Unplanned evacuation of its BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of Interpersonal Communication and Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability at its staffed BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of monitoring or control capability at its staffed BES control center </td> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px; vertical-align: top;"> Written description (optional): </td> </tr> </table>	(Check applicable box) <input type="checkbox"/> Damage or destruction of a Facility <input type="checkbox"/> Physical threat to its Facility <input type="checkbox"/> Physical threat to its BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> BES Emergency: <input type="checkbox"/> firm load shedding <input type="checkbox"/> public appeal for load reduction <input type="checkbox"/> System-wide voltage reduction <input type="checkbox"/> voltage deviation on a Facility <input type="checkbox"/> uncontrolled loss of firm load <input type="checkbox"/> System separation (islanding) <input type="checkbox"/> Generation loss <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of off-site power to a nuclear generating plant (grid supply) <input type="checkbox"/> Transmission loss <input type="checkbox"/> Unplanned evacuation of its BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of Interpersonal Communication and Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability at its staffed BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of monitoring or control capability at its staffed BES control center	Written description (optional):
(Check applicable box) <input type="checkbox"/> Damage or destruction of a Facility <input type="checkbox"/> Physical threat to its Facility <input type="checkbox"/> Physical threat to its BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> BES Emergency: <input type="checkbox"/> firm load shedding <input type="checkbox"/> public appeal for load reduction <input type="checkbox"/> System-wide voltage reduction <input type="checkbox"/> voltage deviation on a Facility <input type="checkbox"/> uncontrolled loss of firm load <input type="checkbox"/> System separation (islanding) <input type="checkbox"/> Generation loss <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of off-site power to a nuclear generating plant (grid supply) <input type="checkbox"/> Transmission loss <input type="checkbox"/> Unplanned evacuation of its BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of Interpersonal Communication and Alternative Interpersonal Communication capability at its staffed BES control center <input type="checkbox"/> Complete loss of monitoring or control capability at its staffed BES control center	Written description (optional):		

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
2		Merged CIP-001-2a Sabotage Reporting and EOP-004-1 Disturbance Reporting into EOP-004-2 Event Reporting; Retire CIP-001-2a Sabotage Reporting and Retired EOP-004-1 Disturbance Reporting.	Revision to entire standard (Project 2009-01)
2	November 7, 2012	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	
2	June 20, 2013	FERC approved	
3	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
3	November 19, 2015	FERC Order issued approving EOP-004-3. Docket No. RM15-13-000.	
4	February 9, 2017	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Revised
4	January 18, 2018	FERC order issued approving EOP-004-4. Docket No. RM17-12-000	

Guideline and Technical Basis

Multiple Reports for a Single Organization

For entities that have multiple registrations, the requirement is that these entities will only have to submit one report for any individual event. For example, if an entity is registered as a Reliability Coordinator, Balancing Authority and Transmission Operator, the entity would only submit one report for a particular event rather submitting three reports as each individual registered entity.

Law Enforcement Reporting

The reliability objective of EOP-004-4 is to improve the reliability of the Bulk Electric System by requiring the reporting of events by Responsible Entities. Certain outages, such as those due to vandalism and terrorism, may not be reasonably preventable. These are the types of events that should be reported to law enforcement. Entities rely upon law enforcement agencies to respond to and investigate those events which have the potential to impact a wider area of the BES. The inclusion of reporting to law enforcement enables and supports reliability principles such as protection of Bulk Electric System from malicious physical attack. The importance of BES awareness of the threat around them is essential to the effective operation and planning to mitigate the potential risk to the BES.

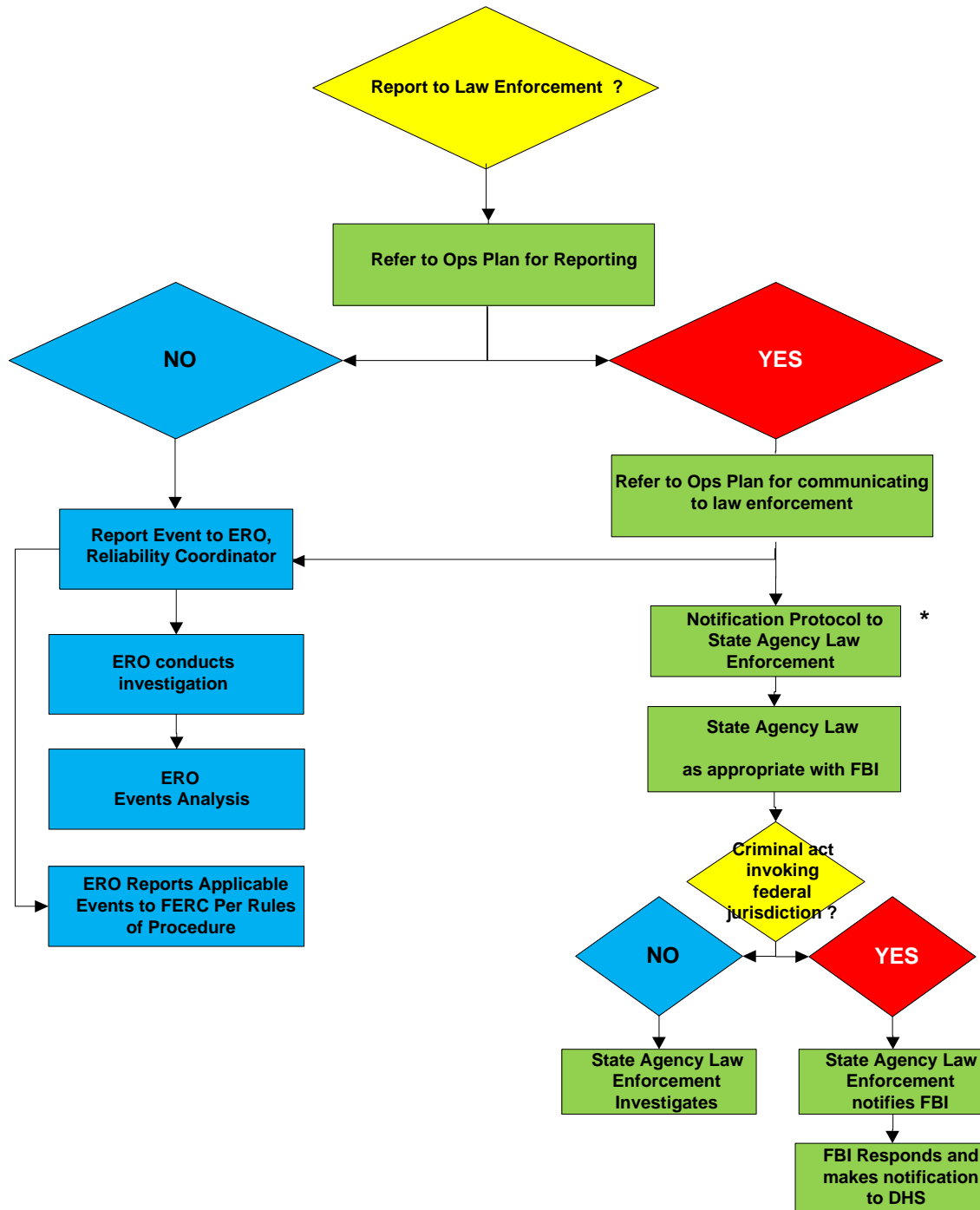
Stakeholders in the Reporting Process

- Industry
- NERC (ERO), Regional Entity
- FERC
- DOE
- NRC
- DHS – Federal
- Homeland Security- State
- State Regulators
- Local Law Enforcement
- State or Provincial Law Enforcement
- FBI
- Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP)

The above stakeholders have an interest in the timely notification, communication and response to an incident at a Facility. The stakeholders have various levels of accountability and have a vested interest in the protection and response to ensure the reliability of the BES.

Example of Reporting Process including Law Enforcement

Entity Experiencing An Event in Attachment 1



* Canadian entities will follow law enforcement protocols applicable in their jurisdictions

Potential Uses of Reportable Information

General situational awareness, correlation of data, trend identification, and identification of potential events of interest for further analysis in the ERO Event Analysis Process are a few potential uses for the information reported under this standard. The standard requires Functional Entities to report the incidents and provide information known at the time of the report. Further data gathering necessary for analysis is provided for under the ERO Event Analysis Program and the NERC Rules of Procedure. The [NERC Rules of Procedure \(section 800\)](#) provide an overview of the responsibilities of the ERO in regards to analysis and dissemination of information for reliability. Jurisdictional agencies (which may include DHS, FBI, NERC, RE, FERC, Provincial Regulators, and DOE) have other duties and responsibilities.

Appendix EOP-004-4-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard EOP-004-4 – Event Reporting

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. **Functional Entities**
No specific provisions.
 - 4.2. **Facilities**
The Facilities subject to this Standard are the Facilities of the Main Transmission System (RTP).
5. **Effective date:**
 - 5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx
 - 5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx
 - 5.3. Effective date of the standard and of this appendix in Québec: Month xx, 20xx

B. Requirements and Measures

No specific provisions.

C. Compliance

1. **Compliance Monitoring Process**
 - 1.1. **Compliance Enforcement Authority**
In Québec, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means the Régie de l'énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.
 - 1.2. **Evidence Retention**
No specific provisions.
 - 1.3. **Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Program**
The Régie de l'énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

Violation Severity Levels

No specific provisions.

Appendix EOP-004-4-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard EOP-004-4 – Event Reporting

D. Regional Variances

No specific provisions.

E. Associated Documents

No specific provisions.

EOP-004 – Attachment 1: Reportable Events

Replace “BES” with “RTP.”

EOP-004 – Attachment 2: Event Reporting Form

Replace “BES” with “RTP.”

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Replace “BES” with “RTP.”

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

- 1. Title:** System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon
- 2. Number:** FAC-010-3
- 3. Purpose:** To ensure that System Operating Limits (SOLs) used in the reliable planning of the Bulk Electric System (BES) are determined based on an established methodology or methodologies.
- 4. Applicability**
 - 4.1. Planning Authority**
- 5. Effective Date:** See Implementation Plan for the Revised Definition of “Remedial Action Scheme”

B. Requirements

- R1.** The Planning Authority shall have a documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Planning Authority Area. This SOL Methodology shall:
 - R1.1.** Be applicable for developing SOLs used in the planning horizon.
 - R1.2.** State that SOLs shall not exceed associated Facility Ratings.
 - R1.3.** Include a description of how to identify the subset of SOLs that qualify as IROLs.
- R2.** The Planning Authority’s SOL Methodology shall include a requirement that SOLs provide BES performance consistent with the following:
 - R2.1.** In the pre-contingency state and with all Facilities in service, the BES shall demonstrate transient, dynamic and voltage stability; all Facilities shall be within their Facility Ratings and within their thermal, voltage and stability limits. In the determination of SOLs, the BES condition used shall reflect expected system conditions and shall reflect changes to system topology such as Facility outages.
 - R2.2.** Following the single Contingencies¹ identified in Requirement 2.2.1 through Requirement 2.2.3, the system shall demonstrate transient, dynamic and voltage stability; all Facilities shall be operating within their Facility Ratings and within their thermal, voltage and stability limits; and Cascading or uncontrolled separation shall not occur.
 - R2.2.1.** Single line to ground or three-phase Fault (whichever is more severe), with Normal Clearing, on any Faulted generator, line, transformer, or shunt device.
 - R2.2.2.** Loss of any generator, line, transformer, or shunt device without a Fault.
 - R2.2.3.** Single pole block, with Normal Clearing, in a monopolar or bipolar high voltage direct current system.
 - R2.3.** Starting with all Facilities in service, the system’s response to a single Contingency, may include any of the following:
 - R2.3.1.** Planned or controlled interruption of electric supply to radial customers or some local network customers connected to or supplied by the Faulted Facility or by the affected area.

¹ The Contingencies identified in R2.2.1 through R2.2.3 are the minimum contingencies that must be studied but are not necessarily the only Contingencies that should be studied.

Standard FAC-010-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

- R2.3.2.** System reconfiguration through manual or automatic control or protection actions.
 - R2.4.** To prepare for the next Contingency, system adjustments may be made, including changes to generation, uses of the transmission system, and the transmission system topology.
 - R2.5.** Starting with all Facilities in service and following any of the multiple Contingencies identified in Reliability Standard TPL-003 the system shall demonstrate transient, dynamic and voltage stability; all Facilities shall be operating within their Facility Ratings and within their thermal, voltage and stability limits; and Cascading or uncontrolled separation shall not occur.
 - R2.6.** In determining the system's response to any of the multiple Contingencies, identified in Reliability Standard TPL-003, in addition to the actions identified in R2.3.1 and R2.3.2, the following shall be acceptable:
 - R2.6.1.** Planned or controlled interruption of electric supply to customers (load shedding), the planned removal from service of certain generators, and/or the curtailment of contracted Firm (non-recallable reserved) electric power Transfers.
- R3.** The Planning Authority's methodology for determining SOLs, shall include, as a minimum, a description of the following, along with any reliability margins applied for each:
 - R3.1.** Study model (must include at least the entire Planning Authority Area as well as the critical modeling details from other Planning Authority Areas that would impact the Facility or Facilities under study).
 - R3.2.** Selection of applicable Contingencies.
 - R3.3.** Level of detail of system models used to determine SOLs.
 - R3.4.** Allowed uses of Remedial Action Schemes.
 - R3.5.** Anticipated transmission system configuration, generation dispatch and Load level.
 - R3.6.** Criteria for determining when violating a SOL qualifies as an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL) and criteria for developing any associated IROL T_v .
- R4.** The Planning Authority shall issue its SOL Methodology, and any change to that methodology, to all of the following prior to the effectiveness of the change:
 - R4.1.** Each adjacent Planning Authority and each Planning Authority that indicated it has a reliability-related need for the methodology.
 - R4.2.** Each Reliability Coordinator and Transmission Operator that operates any portion of the Planning Authority's Planning Authority Area.
 - R4.3.** Each Transmission Planner that works in the Planning Authority's Planning Authority Area.
- R5.** If a recipient of the SOL Methodology provides documented technical comments on the methodology, the Planning Authority shall provide a documented response to that recipient within 45 calendar days of receipt of those comments. The response shall indicate whether a change will be made to the SOL Methodology and, if no change will be made to that SOL Methodology, the reason why. (Retirement approved by FERC effective January 21, 2014.)

C. Measures

- M1.** The Planning Authority's SOL Methodology shall address all of the items listed in Requirement 1 through Requirement 3.

- M2.** The Planning Authority shall have evidence it issued its SOL Methodology and any changes to that methodology, including the date they were issued, in accordance with Requirement 4.

If the recipient of the SOL Methodology provides documented comments on its technical review of that SOL methodology, the Planning Authority that distributed that SOL Methodology shall have evidence that it provided a written response to that commenter within 45 calendar days of receipt of those comments in accordance with Requirement 5. (Retirement approved by FERC effective January 21, 2014.)

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Monitoring Responsibility

Regional Reliability Organization

1.2. Compliance Monitoring Period and Reset Time Frame

Each Planning Authority shall self-certify its compliance to the Compliance Monitor at least once every three years. New Planning Authorities shall demonstrate compliance through an on-site audit conducted by the Compliance Monitor within the first year that it commences operation. The Compliance Monitor shall also conduct an on-site audit once every nine years and an investigation upon complaint to assess performance.

The Performance-Reset Period shall be twelve months from the last non-compliance.

1.3. Data Retention

The Planning Authority shall keep all superseded portions to its SOL Methodology for 12 months beyond the date of the change in that methodology ~~and shall keep all documented comments on its SOL Methodology and associated responses for three years.~~ In addition, entities found non-compliant shall keep information related to the non-compliance until found compliant. (Deleted text retired-Retirement approved by FERC effective January 21, 2014.)

The Compliance Monitor shall keep the last audit and all subsequent compliance records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

The Planning Authority shall make the following available for inspection during an on-site audit by the Compliance Monitor or within 15 business days of a request as part of an investigation upon complaint:

1.4.1 SOL Methodology.

Documented comments provided by a recipient of the SOL Methodology on its technical review of a SOL Methodology, and the associated responses. (Retirement approved by FERC effective January 21, 2014.)

1.4.2 Superseded portions of its SOL Methodology that had been made within the past 12 months.

1.4.3 Evidence that the SOL Methodology and any changes to the methodology that occurred within the past 12 months were issued to all required entities.

2. Levels of Non-Compliance for Western Interconnection: (To be replaced with VSLs once developed and approved by WECC)

2.1. Level 1: There shall be a level one non-compliance if either of the following conditions exists:

2.1.1 The SOL Methodology did not include a statement indicating that Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded.

Standard FAC-010-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

- 2.1.2** No evidence of responses to a recipient's comments on the SOL Methodology.
(Retirement approved by FERC effective January 21, 2014.)
- 2.2. Level 2:** The SOL Methodology did not include a requirement to address all of the elements in R2.1 through R2.3 and E1.
- 2.3. Level 3:** There shall be a level three non-compliance if any of the following conditions exists:
 - 2.3.1** The SOL Methodology did not include a statement indicating that Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded and the methodology did not include evaluation of system response to one of the three types of single Contingencies identified in R2.2.
 - 2.3.2** The SOL Methodology did not include a statement indicating that Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded and the methodology did not include evaluation of system response to two of the seven types of multiple Contingencies identified in E1.1.
 - 2.3.3** The System Operating Limits Methodology did not include a statement indicating that Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded and the methodology did not address two of the six required topics in R3.
- 2.4. Level 4:** The SOL Methodology was not issued to all required entities in accordance with R4

Standard FAC-010-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

3. Violation Severity Levels:

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
R1	Not applicable.	The Planning Authority has a documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Planning Authority Area, but it does not address R1.2	The Planning Authority has a documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Planning Authority Area, but it does not address R1.3.	The Planning Authority has a documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Planning Authority Area, but it does not address R1.1. OR The Planning Authority has no documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Planning Authority Area.
R2	The Planning Authority's SOL Methodology is missing one requirement as described in R2.1, R2.2, R2.3, R2.4, R2.5, or R2.6.	The Planning Authority's SOL Methodology is missing two requirements as described in R2.1, R2.2, R2.3, R2.4, R2.5, or R2.6	The Planning Authority's SOL Methodology is missing three requirements as described in R2.1, R2.2, R2.3, R2.4, R2.5, or R2.6.	The Planning Authority's SOL Methodology is missing four or more requirements as described in R2.1, R2.2-, R2.3, R2.4, R2.5, or R2.6
R3	The Planning Authority has a methodology for determining SOLs that includes a description for all but one of the following: R3.1 through R3.6.	The Planning Authority has a methodology for determining SOLs that includes a description for all but two of the following: R3.1 through R3.6.	The Planning Authority has a methodology for determining SOLs that includes a description for all but three of the following: R3.1 through R3.6.	The Planning Authority has a methodology for determining SOLs that is missing a description of four or more of the following: R3.1 through R3.6.
R4	One or both of the following: The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but one of the required entities. For a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided up to 30 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.	One of the following: The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but one of the required entities AND for a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided 30 calendar days or more, but less than 60 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.	One of the following: The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but one of the required entities AND for a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided 60 calendar days or more, but less than 90 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.	One of the following: The Planning Authority failed to issue its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to more than three of the required entities. The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but one of the required entities AND for a change in

Standard FAC-010-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
		<p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but two of the required entities AND for a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided up to 30 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.</p>	<p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but two of the required entities AND for a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided 30 calendar days or more, but less than 60 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but three of the required entities AND for a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided up to 30 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.</p>	<p>methodology, the changed methodology was provided 90 calendar days or more after the effectiveness of the change.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but two of the required entities AND for a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided 60 calendar days or more, but less than 90 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but three of the required entities AND for a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided 30 calendar days or more, but less than 60 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.</p> <p>The Planning Authority issued its SOL Methodology and changes to that methodology to all but four of the required entities AND for a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided up to 30 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.</p>
R5	The Planning Authority received documented technical	The Planning Authority received documented technical	The Planning Authority received documented technical	The Planning Authority received documented technical

Standard FAC-010-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
<p>(Retirement approved by FERC effective January 21, 2014.)</p>	<p>comments on its SOL Methodology and provided a complete response in a time period that was longer than 45 calendar days but less than 60 calendar days.</p>	<p>comments on its SOL Methodology and provided a complete response in a time period that was 60 calendar days or longer but less than 75 calendar days.</p>	<p>comments on its SOL Methodology and provided a complete response in a time period that was 75 calendar days or longer but less than 90 calendar days.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Authority's response to documented technical comments on its SOL Methodology indicated that a change will not be made, but did not include an explanation of why the change will not be made.</p>	<p>comments on its SOL Methodology and provided a complete response in a time period that was 90 calendar days or longer.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Authority's response to documented technical comments on its SOL Methodology did not indicate whether a change will be made to the SOL Methodology.</p>

E. Regional Differences

- 1.** The following Interconnection-wide Regional Difference shall be applicable in the Western Interconnection:
 - 1.1.** As governed by the requirements of R2.5 and R2.6, starting with all Facilities in service, shall require the evaluation of the following multiple Facility Contingencies when establishing SOLs:
 - 1.1.1** Simultaneous permanent phase to ground Faults on different phases of each of two adjacent transmission circuits on a multiple circuit tower, with Normal Clearing. If multiple circuit towers are used only for station entrance and exit purposes, and if they do not exceed five towers at each station, then this condition is an acceptable risk and therefore can be excluded.
 - 1.1.2** A permanent phase to ground Fault on any generator, transmission circuit, transformer, or bus section with Delayed Fault Clearing except for bus sectionalizing breakers or bus-tie breakers addressed in E1.1.7
 - 1.1.3** Simultaneous permanent loss of both poles of a direct current bipolar Facility without an alternating current Fault.
 - 1.1.4** The failure of a circuit breaker associated with a Remedial Action Scheme to operate when required following: the loss of any element without a Fault; or a permanent phase to ground Fault, with Normal Clearing, on any transmission circuit, transformer or bus section.
 - 1.1.5** A non-three phase Fault with Normal Clearing on common mode Contingency of two adjacent circuits on separate towers unless the event frequency is determined to be less than one in thirty years.
 - 1.1.6** A common mode outage of two generating units connected to the same switchyard, not otherwise addressed by FAC-010.
 - 1.1.7** The loss of multiple bus sections as a result of failure or delayed clearing of a bus tie or bus sectionalizing breaker to clear a permanent Phase to Ground Fault.
 - 1.2.** SOLs shall be established such that for multiple Facility Contingencies in E1.1.1 through E1.1.5 operation within the SOL shall provide system performance consistent with the following:
 - 1.2.1** All Facilities are operating within their applicable Post-Contingency thermal, frequency and voltage limits.
 - 1.2.2** Cascading does not occur.
 - 1.2.3** Uncontrolled separation of the system does not occur.
 - 1.2.4** The system demonstrates transient, dynamic and voltage stability.
 - 1.2.5** Depending on system design and expected system impacts, the controlled interruption of electric supply to customers (load shedding), the planned removal from service of certain generators, and/or the curtailment of contracted firm (non-recallable reserved) electric power transfers may be necessary to maintain the overall security of the interconnected transmission systems.
 - 1.2.6** Interruption of firm transfer, Load or system reconfiguration is permitted through manual or automatic control or protection actions.

Standard FAC-010-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

- 1.2.7** To prepare for the next Contingency, system adjustments are permitted, including changes to generation, Load and the transmission system topology when determining limits.
- 1.3.** SOLs shall be established such that for multiple Facility Contingencies in E1.1.6 through E1.1.7 operation within the SOL shall provide system performance consistent with the following with respect to impacts on other systems:
- 1.3.1** Cascading does not occur.
- 1.4.** The Western Interconnection may make changes (performance category adjustments) to the Contingencies required to be studied and/or the required responses to Contingencies for specific facilities based on actual system performance and robust design. Such changes will apply in determining SOLs.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	November 1, 2006	Adopted by Board of Trustees	New
1	November 1, 2006	Fixed typo. Removed the word “each” from the 1 st sentence of section D.1.3, Data Retention.	01/11/07
2	June 24, 2008	Adopted by Board of Trustees; FERC Order 705	Revised
2		Changed the effective date to July 1, 2008 Changed “Cascading Outage” to “Cascading” Replaced Levels of Non-compliance with Violation Severity Levels	Revised
2	January 22, 2010	Updated effective date and footer to April 29, 2009 based on the March 20, 2009 FERC Order	Update
2.1	November 5, 2009	Adopted by the Board of Trustees — errata change Section E1.1 modified to reflect the renumbering of requirements R2.4 and R2.5 from FAC-010-1 to R2.5 and R2.6 in FAC-010-2.	Errata
2.1	April 19, 2010	FERC Approved — errata change Section E1.1 modified to reflect the renumbering of requirements R2.4 and R2.5 from FAC-010-1 to R2.5 and R2.6 in FAC-010-2.	Errata
2.1	February 7, 2013	R5 and associated elements approved by NERC Board of Trustees for retirement as part of the Paragraph 81 project (Project 2013-02) pending applicable regulatory approval.	

Standard FAC-010-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

2.1	November 21, 2013	R5 and associated elements approved by FERC for retirement as part of the Paragraph 81 project (Project 2013-02)	
2.1	February 24, 2014	Updated VSLs based on June 24, 2013 approval.	
3	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
3	November 19, 2015	FERC Order issued approving FAC-010-3. Docket No. RM15-13-000.	

Appendix FAC-010-3-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard FAC-010-3 – System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.
4. **Applicability:**

The Facilities subject to this Standard are the Facilities of the Main Transmission System (RTP).

5. **Effective date:**

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.3. Effective date of the standard and
of this appendix in Québec: | Month xx, 20xx |

B. Requirements

Specific provision applicable to Requirement R2.2.1:

Requirement R2.2.1 applies as stipulated in the Standard, except for the RTP Facilities operating at less than 230 kV that were not substantially modified after January 1, 2019 for which R2.2.1 is replaced by the following requirement:

R2.2.1 Single line to ground with Normal Clearing, on any Faulted generator, line, transformer, or shunt device.

C. Measures

No specific provisions.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Monitoring Responsibility

In Québec, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means the Régie de l'énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring Period and Reset Time Frame

No specific provisions.

1.3. Data Retention

No specific provisions.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

Appendix FAC-010-3-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard FAC-010-3 – System Operating Limits Methodology for the Planning Horizon

No specific provisions.

2. Levels of Non-Compliance for Western Interconnection: (To be replaced with VSLs once developed and approved by WECC)

No specific provisions.

3. Violation Severity Levels

No specific provisions.

E. Regional Differences

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** System Operating Limits Methodology for the Operations Horizon
2. **Number:** FAC-011-3
3. **Purpose:** To ensure that System Operating Limits (SOLs) used in the reliable operation of the Bulk Electric System (BES) are determined based on an established methodology or methodologies.
4. **Applicability**
 - 4.1. Reliability Coordinator
5. **Effective Date:** See Implementation Plan for the Revised Definition of “Remedial Action Scheme”.

B. Requirements

- R1. The Reliability Coordinator shall have a documented methodology for use in developing SOLs (SOL Methodology) within its Reliability Coordinator Area. This SOL Methodology shall:
 - R1.1. Be applicable for developing SOLs used in the operations horizon.
 - R1.2. State that SOLs shall not exceed associated Facility Ratings.
 - R1.3. Include a description of how to identify the subset of SOLs that qualify as IROLs.
- R2. The Reliability Coordinator’s SOL Methodology shall include a requirement that SOLs provide BES performance consistent with the following:
 - R2.1. In the pre-contingency state, the BES shall demonstrate transient, dynamic and voltage stability; all Facilities shall be within their Facility Ratings and within their thermal, voltage and stability limits. In the determination of SOLs, the BES condition used shall reflect current or expected system conditions and shall reflect changes to system topology such as Facility outages.
 - R2.2. Following the single Contingencies¹ identified in Requirement 2.2.1 through Requirement 2.2.3, the system shall demonstrate transient, dynamic and voltage stability; all Facilities shall be operating within their Facility Ratings and within their thermal, voltage and stability limits; and Cascading or uncontrolled separation shall not occur.
 - R2.2.1. Single line to ground or 3-phase Fault (whichever is more severe), with Normal Clearing, on any Faulted generator, line, transformer, or shunt device.
 - R2.2.2. Loss of any generator, line, transformer, or shunt device without a Fault.
 - R2.2.3. Single pole block, with Normal Clearing, in a monopolar or bipolar high voltage direct current system.
 - R2.3. In determining the system’s response to a single Contingency, the following shall be acceptable:

¹ The Contingencies identified in FAC-011 R2.2.1 through R2.2.3 are the minimum contingencies that must be studied but are not necessarily the only Contingencies that should be studied.

- R2.3.1.** Planned or controlled interruption of electric supply to radial customers or some local network customers connected to or supplied by the Faulted Facility or by the affected area.
 - R2.3.2.** Interruption of other network customers, (a) only if the system has already been adjusted, or is being adjusted, following at least one prior outage, or (b) if the real-time operating conditions are more adverse than anticipated in the corresponding studies
 - R2.3.3.** System reconfiguration through manual or automatic control or protection actions.
 - R2.4.** To prepare for the next Contingency, system adjustments may be made, including changes to generation, uses of the transmission system, and the transmission system topology.
- R3.** The Reliability Coordinator’s methodology for determining SOLs, shall include, as a minimum, a description of the following, along with any reliability margins applied for each:
 - R3.1.** Study model (must include at least the entire Reliability Coordinator Area as well as the critical modeling details from other Reliability Coordinator Areas that would impact the Facility or Facilities under study.)
 - R3.2.** Selection of applicable Contingencies
 - R3.3.** A process for determining which of the stability limits associated with the list of multiple contingencies (provided by the Planning Authority in accordance with FAC-014 Requirement 6) are applicable for use in the operating horizon given the actual or expected system conditions.
 - R3.3.1.** This process shall address the need to modify these limits, to modify the list of limits, and to modify the list of associated multiple contingencies.
 - R3.4.** Level of detail of system models used to determine SOLs.
 - R3.5.** Allowed uses of Remedial Action Schemes.
 - R3.6.** Anticipated transmission system configuration, generation dispatch and Load level
 - R3.7.** Criteria for determining when violating a SOL qualifies as an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL) and criteria for developing any associated IROL T_v .
- R4.** The Reliability Coordinator shall issue its SOL Methodology and any changes to that methodology, prior to the effectiveness of the Methodology or of a change to the Methodology, to all of the following:
 - R4.1.** Each adjacent Reliability Coordinator and each Reliability Coordinator that indicated it has a reliability-related need for the methodology.
 - R4.2.** Each Planning Authority and Transmission Planner that models any portion of the Reliability Coordinator’s Reliability Coordinator Area.
 - R4.3.** Each Transmission Operator that operates in the Reliability Coordinator Area.

C. Measures

- M1.** The Reliability Coordinator’s SOL Methodology shall address all of the items listed in Requirement 1 through Requirement 3.

- M2.** The Reliability Coordinator shall have evidence it issued its SOL Methodology, and any changes to that methodology, including the date they were issued, in accordance with Requirement 4.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Monitoring Responsibility

Regional Reliability Organization

1.2. Compliance Monitoring Period and Reset Time Frame

Each Reliability Coordinator shall self-certify its compliance to the Compliance Monitor at least once every three years. New Reliability Authorities shall demonstrate compliance through an on-site audit conducted by the Compliance Monitor within the first year that it commences operation. The Compliance Monitor shall also conduct an on-site audit once every nine years and an investigation upon complaint to assess performance.

The Performance-Reset Period shall be twelve months from the last non-compliance.

1.3. Data Retention

The Reliability Coordinator shall keep all superseded portions to its SOL Methodology for 12 months beyond the date of the change in that methodology. In addition, entities found non-compliant shall keep information related to the non-compliance until found compliant

The Compliance Monitor shall keep the last audit and all subsequent compliance records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

The Reliability Coordinator shall make the following available for inspection during an on-site audit by the Compliance Monitor or within 15 business days of a request as part of an investigation upon complaint:

1.4.1 SOL Methodology.

1.4.2 Superseded portions of its SOL Methodology that had been made within the past 12 months.

1.4.3 Evidence that the SOL Methodology and any changes to the methodology that occurred within the past 12 months were issued to all required entities.

2. Levels of Non-Compliance for Western Interconnection: (To be replaced with VSLs once developed and approved by WECC)

2.1. Level 1: There shall be a level one non-compliance if either of the following conditions exists:

2.1.1 The SOL Methodology did not include a statement indicating that Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded.

2.2. Level 2: The SOL Methodology did not include a requirement to address all of the elements in R3.1, R3.2, R3.4 through R3.7 and E1.

2.3. Level 3: There shall be a level three non-compliance if any of the following conditions exists:

- 2.3.1** The SOL Methodology did not include a statement indicating that Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded and the methodology did not include evaluation of system response to one of the three types of single Contingencies identified in R2.2.
- 2.3.2** The SOL Methodology did not include a statement indicating that Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded and the methodology did not include evaluation of system response to two of the seven types of multiple Contingencies identified in E1.1.
- 2.3.3** The System Operating Limits Methodology did not include a statement indicating that Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded and the methodology did not address two of the six required topics in R3.1, R3.2, R3.4 through R3.7.
- 2.4. Level 4:** The SOL Methodology was not issued to all required entities in accordance with R4.

3. Violation Severity Levels:

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
R1	Not applicable.	The Reliability Coordinator has a documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Reliability Coordinator Area, but it does not address R1.2	The Reliability Coordinator has a documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Reliability Coordinator Area, but it does not address R1.3.	The Reliability Coordinator has a documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Reliability Coordinator Area, but it does not address R1.1. OR The Reliability Coordinator has no documented SOL Methodology for use in developing SOLs within its Reliability Coordinator Area.
R2	The Reliability Coordinator's SOL Methodology requires that SOLs are set to meet BES performance following single contingencies, but does not require that SOLs are set to meet BES performance in the pre-contingency state. (R2.1)	Not applicable.	The Reliability Coordinator's SOL Methodology requires that SOLs are set to meet BES performance in the pre-contingency state, but does not require that SOLs are set to meet BES performance following single contingencies. (R2.2 – R2.4)	The Reliability Coordinator's SOL Methodology does not require that SOLs are set to meet BES performance in the pre-contingency state and does not require that SOLs are set to meet BES performance following single contingencies. (R2.1 through R2.4)
R3	The Reliability Coordinator's SOL Methodology includes a description for all but one of the following: R3.1 through R3.7.	The Reliability Coordinator's SOL Methodology includes a description for all but two of the following: R3.1 through R3.7.	The Reliability Coordinator's SOL Methodology includes a description for all but three of the following: R3.1 through R3.7.	The Reliability Coordinator's SOL Methodology is missing a description of four or more of the following: R3.1 through R3.7.
R3.6	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
R4	The Reliability Coordinator failed to issue its SOL Methodology and/or one or more changes to that methodology to one of the required entities specified in R4.1, R4.2, and R4.3.	The Reliability Coordinator failed to issue its SOL Methodology and/or one or more changes to that methodology to two of the required entities specified in R4.1, R4.2, and R4.3.	The Reliability Coordinator failed to issue its SOL Methodology and/or one or more changes to that methodology to three of the required entities specified in R4.1, R4.2, and R4.3.	The Reliability Coordinator failed to issue its SOL Methodology and/or one or more changes to that methodology to four or more of the required entities specified in R4.1, R4.2, and R4.3

Standard FAC-011-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Operations Horizon

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
	<p>OR</p> <p>For a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided to one or more of the required entities before the effectiveness of the change, but was provided to all the required entities no more than 10 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.</p>	<p>OR</p> <p>For a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided to one or more of the required entities more than 10 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change, but less than or equal to 20 days after the effectiveness of the change.</p>	<p>OR</p> <p>For a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided to one or more of required entities more than 20 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change, but less than or equal to 30 days after the effectiveness of the change.</p>	<p>OR</p> <p>For a change in methodology, the changed methodology was provided to one or more of the required entities more than 30 calendar days after the effectiveness of the change.</p>

Regional Differences

- 1.** The following Interconnection-wide Regional Difference shall be applicable in the Western Interconnection:
 - 1.1.** As governed by the requirements of R3.3, starting with all Facilities in service, shall require the evaluation of the following multiple Facility Contingencies when establishing SOLs:
 - 1.1.1** Simultaneous permanent phase to ground Faults on different phases of each of two adjacent transmission circuits on a multiple circuit tower, with Normal Clearing. If multiple circuit towers are used only for station entrance and exit purposes, and if they do not exceed five towers at each station, then this condition is an acceptable risk and therefore can be excluded.
 - 1.1.2** A permanent phase to ground Fault on any generator, transmission circuit, transformer, or bus section with Delayed Fault Clearing except for bus sectionalizing breakers or bus-tie breakers addressed in E1.1.7
 - 1.1.3** Simultaneous permanent loss of both poles of a direct current bipolar Facility without an alternating current Fault.
 - 1.1.4** The failure of a circuit breaker associated with a Remedial Action Scheme to operate when required following: the loss of any element without a Fault; or a permanent phase to ground Fault, with Normal Clearing, on any transmission circuit, transformer or bus section.
 - 1.1.5** A non-three phase Fault with Normal Clearing on common mode Contingency of two adjacent circuits on separate towers unless the event frequency is determined to be less than one in thirty years.
 - 1.1.6** A common mode outage of two generating units connected to the same switchyard, not otherwise addressed by FAC-011.
 - 1.1.7** The loss of multiple bus sections as a result of failure or delayed clearing of a bus tie or bus sectionalizing breaker to clear a permanent Phase to Ground Fault.
 - 1.2.** SOLs shall be established such that for multiple Facility Contingencies in E1.1.1 through E1.1.5 operation within the SOL shall provide system performance consistent with the following:
 - 1.2.1** All Facilities are operating within their applicable Post-Contingency thermal, frequency and voltage limits.
 - 1.2.2** Cascading does not occur.
 - 1.2.3** Uncontrolled separation of the system does not occur.
 - 1.2.4** The system demonstrates transient, dynamic and voltage stability.
 - 1.2.5** Depending on system design and expected system impacts, the controlled interruption of electric supply to customers (load shedding), the planned removal from service of certain generators, and/or the curtailment of contracted firm (non-recallable reserved) electric power transfers may be necessary to maintain the overall security of the interconnected transmission systems.
 - 1.2.6** Interruption of firm transfer, Load or system reconfiguration is permitted through manual or automatic control or protection actions.

- 1.2.7 To prepare for the next Contingency, system adjustments are permitted, including changes to generation, Load and the transmission system topology when determining limits.
- 1.3. SOLs shall be established such that for multiple Facility Contingencies in E1.1.6 through E1.1.7 operation within the SOL shall provide system performance consistent with the following with respect to impacts on other systems:
 - 1.3.1 Cascading does not occur.
- 1.4. The Western Interconnection may make changes (performance category adjustments) to the Contingencies required to be studied and/or the required responses to Contingencies for specific facilities based on actual system performance and robust design. Such changes will apply in determining SOLs.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	November 1, 2006	Adopted by Board of Trustees	New
2		Changed the effective date to October 1, 2008 Changed “Cascading Outage” to “Cascading” Replaced Levels of Non-compliance with Violation Severity Levels Corrected footnote 1 to reference FAC-011 rather than FAC-010	Revised
2	June 24, 2008	Adopted by Board of Trustees: FERC Order 705	Revised
2	January 22, 2010	Updated effective date and footer to April 29, 2009 based on the March 20, 2009 FERC Order	Update
2	February 7, 2013	R5 and associated elements approved by NERC Board of Trustees for retirement as part of the Paragraph 81 project (Project 2013-02) pending applicable regulatory approval.	
2	November 21, 2013	R5 and associated elements approved by FERC for retirement as part of the Paragraph 81 project (Project 2013-02)	
2	February 24, 2014	Updated VSLs based on June 24, 2013 approval.	
3	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
3	November 19, 2015	FERC Order issued approving FAC-011-3. Docket No. RM15-13-000.	

Standard FAC-011-3 — System Operating Limits Methodology for the Operations Horizon

--	--	--	--

Appendix FAC-011-3-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard FAC-011-3 – System Operating Limits Methodology for the Operating Horizon

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.
4. **Applicability:**

The Facilities subject to this Standard are the Facilities of the Main Transmission System (RTP)

5. **Effective date:**

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.3. Effective date of the standard and
of this appendix in Québec: | Month xx, 20xx |

B. Requirements

Specific provision applicable to Requirement R2.2.1:

Requirement R2.2.1 applies as stipulated in the Standard, except for the RTP Facilities operating at less than 230 kV that were not substantially modified after January 1, 2019 for which R2.2.1 is replaced by the following requirement:

R2.2.1 Single line to ground with Normal Clearing, on any Faulted generator, line, transformer, or shunt device.

C. Measures

No specific provisions.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Monitoring Responsibility

In Québec, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means the Régie de l'énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring Period and Reset Time Frame

No specific provisions.

1.3. Data Retention

No specific provisions.

Appendix FAC-011-3-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard FAC-011-3 – System Operating Limits Methodology for the Operating Horizon

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

2. Levels of Non-Compliance for Western Interconnection: (To be replaced with VSLs once developed and approved by WECC)

No specific provisions.

3. Violation Severity Levels

All occurrences of “BES” are replaced with “RTP.”

Regional Differences

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Rated System Path Methodology**
2. **Number:** **MOD-029-2a**
3. **Purpose:** To increase consistency and reliability in the development and documentation of transfer capability calculations for short-term use performed by entities using the Rated System Path Methodology to support analysis and system operations.
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. Each Transmission Operator that uses the Rated System Path Methodology to calculate Total Transfer Capabilities (TTCs) for ATC Paths.
 - 4.2. Each Transmission Service Provider that uses the Rated System Path Methodology to calculate Available Transfer Capabilities (ATCs) for ATC Paths.
5. **Proposed Effective Date:** See Implementation Plan for the Revised Definition of “Remedial Action Scheme”

B. Requirements

- R1. When calculating TTCs for ATC Paths, the Transmission Operator shall use a Transmission model which satisfies the following requirements: [*Violation Risk Factor: Lower*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning*]
 - R1.1. The model utilizes data and assumptions consistent with the time period being studied and that meets the following criteria:
 - R1.1.1. Includes at least:
 - R1.1.1.1. The Transmission Operator area. Equivalent representation of radial lines and facilities 161kV or below is allowed.
 - R1.1.1.2. All Transmission Operator areas contiguous with its own Transmission Operator area. (Equivalent representation is allowed.)
 - R1.1.1.3. Any other Transmission Operator area linked to the Transmission Operator’s area by joint operating agreement. (Equivalent representation is allowed.)
 - R1.1.2. Models all system Elements as in-service for the assumed initial conditions.
 - R1.1.3. Models all generation (may be either a single generator or multiple generators) that is greater than 20 MVA at the point of interconnection in the studied area.

- R1.1.4.** Models phase shifters in non-regulating mode, unless otherwise specified in the Available Transfer Capability Implementation Document (ATCID).
 - R1.1.5.** Uses Load forecast by Balancing Authority.
 - R1.1.6.** Uses Transmission Facility additions and retirements.
 - R1.1.7.** Uses Generation Facility additions and retirements.
 - R1.1.8.** Uses Remedial Action Scheme (RAS) models where currently existing or projected for implementation within the studied time horizon.
 - R1.1.9.** Models series compensation for each line at the expected operating level unless specified otherwise in the ATCID.
 - R1.1.10.** Includes any other modeling requirements or criteria specified in the ATCID.
- R1.2.** Uses Facility Ratings as provided by the Transmission Owner and Generator Owner
- R2.** The Transmission Operator shall use the following process to determine TTC:
[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]
 - R2.1.** Except where otherwise specified within MOD-029-2a, adjust base case generation and Load levels within the updated power flow model to determine the TTC (maximum flow or reliability limit) that can be simulated on the ATC Path while at the same time satisfying all planning criteria contingencies as follows:
 - R2.1.1.** When modeling normal conditions, all Transmission Elements will be modeled at or below 100% of their continuous rating.
 - R2.1.2.** When modeling contingencies the system shall demonstrate transient, dynamic and voltage stability, with no Transmission Element modeled above its Emergency Rating.
 - R2.1.3.** Uncontrolled separation shall not occur.
 - R2.2.** Where it is impossible to actually simulate a reliability-limited flow in a direction counter to prevailing flows (on an alternating current Transmission line), set the TTC for the non-prevailing direction equal to the TTC in the prevailing direction. If the TTC in the prevailing flow direction is dependent on a Remedial Action Scheme (RAS), set the TTC for the non-prevailing flow direction equal to the greater of the maximum flow that can be simulated in the non-prevailing flow direction or the maximum TTC that can be achieved in the prevailing flow direction without use of a RAS.
 - R2.3.** For an ATC Path whose capacity is limited by contract, set TTC on the ATC Path at the lesser of the maximum allowable contract capacity or the reliability limit as determined by R2.1.

- R2.4.** For an ATC Path whose TTC varies due to simultaneous interaction with one or more other paths, develop a nomogram describing the interaction of the paths and the resulting TTC under specified conditions.
- R2.5.** The Transmission Operator shall identify when the TTC for the ATC Path being studied has an adverse impact on the TTC value of any existing path. Do this by modeling the flow on the path being studied at its proposed new TTC level simultaneous with the flow on the existing path at its TTC level while at the same time honoring the reliability criteria outlined in R2.1. The Transmission Operator shall include the resolution of this adverse impact in its study report for the ATC Path.
- R2.6.** Where multiple ownership of Transmission rights exists on an ATC Path, allocate TTC of that ATC Path in accordance with the contractual agreement made by the multiple owners of that ATC Path.
- R2.7.** For ATC Paths whose path rating, adjusted for seasonal variance, was established, known and used in operation since January 1, 1994, and no action has been taken to have the path rated using a different method, set the TTC at that previously established amount.
- R2.8.** Create a study report that describes the steps above that were undertaken (R2.1 – R2.7), including the contingencies and assumptions used, when determining the TTC and the results of the study. Where three phase fault damping is used to determine stability limits, that report shall also identify the percent used and include justification for use unless specified otherwise in the ATCID.
- R3.** Each Transmission Operator shall establish the TTC at the lesser of the value calculated in R2 or any System Operating Limit (SOL) for that ATC Path. [*Violation Risk Factor: Lower*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning*]
- R4.** Within seven calendar days of the finalization of the study report, the Transmission Operator shall make available to the Transmission Service Provider of the ATC Path, the most current value for TTC and the TTC study report documenting the assumptions used and steps taken in determining the current value for TTC for that ATC Path. [*Violation Risk Factor: Lower*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning*]
- R5.** When calculating ETC for firm Existing Transmission Commitments (ETC_F) for a specified period for an ATC Path, the Transmission Service Provider shall use the algorithm below: [*Violation Risk Factor: Lower*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning*]

$$ETC_F = NL_F + NITS_F + GF_F + PTP_F + ROR_F + OS_F$$

Where:

NL_F is the firm capacity set aside to serve peak Native Load forecast commitments for the time period being calculated, to include losses, and Native Load growth, not otherwise included in Transmission Reliability Margin or Capacity Benefit Margin.

NITS_F is the firm capacity reserved for Network Integration Transmission Service serving Load, to include losses, and Load growth, not otherwise included in Transmission Reliability Margin or Capacity Benefit Margin.

GF_F is the firm capacity set aside for grandfathered Transmission Service and contracts for energy and/or Transmission Service, where executed prior to the effective date of a Transmission Service Provider’s Open Access Transmission Tariff or “safe harbor tariff.”

PTP_F is the firm capacity reserved for confirmed Point-to-Point Transmission Service.

ROR_F is the firm capacity reserved for Roll-over rights for contracts granting Transmission Customers the right of first refusal to take or continue to take Transmission Service when the Transmission Customer’s Transmission Service contract expires or is eligible for renewal.

OS_F is the firm capacity reserved for any other service(s), contract(s), or agreement(s) not specified above using Firm Transmission Service as specified in the ATCID.

- R6.** When calculating ETC for non-firm Existing Transmission Commitments (ETC_{NF}) for all time horizons for an ATC Path the Transmission Service Provider shall use the following algorithm: [*Violation Risk Factor: Lower*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning*]

$$ETC_{NF} = NITS_{NF} + GF_{NF} + PTP_{NF} + OS_{NF}$$

Where:

NITS_{NF} is the non-firm capacity set aside for Network Integration Transmission Service serving Load (i.e., secondary service), to include losses, and load growth not otherwise included in Transmission Reliability Margin or Capacity Benefit Margin.

GF_{NF} is the non-firm capacity set aside for grandfathered Transmission Service and contracts for energy and/or Transmission Service, where executed prior to the effective date of a Transmission Service Provider’s Open Access Transmission Tariff or “safe harbor tariff.”

PTP_{NF} is non-firm capacity reserved for confirmed Point-to-Point Transmission Service.

OS_{NF} is the non-firm capacity reserved for any other service(s), contract(s), or agreement(s) not specified above using non-firm transmission service as specified in the ATCID.

- R7.** When calculating firm ATC for an ATC Path for a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider shall use the following algorithm: [*Violation Risk Factor: Lower*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning*]

$$ATC_F = TTC - ETC_F - CBM - TRM + Postback_{SF} + counterflows_{SF}$$

Where

ATC_F is the firm Available Transfer Capability for the ATC Path for that period.

TTC is the Total Transfer Capability of the ATC Path for that period.

ETC_F is the sum of existing firm commitments for the ATC Path during that period.

CBM is the Capacity Benefit Margin for the ATC Path during that period.

TRM is the Transmission Reliability Margin for the ATC Path during that period.

Postbacks_F are changes to firm Available Transfer Capability due to a change in the use of Transmission Service for that period, as defined in Business Practices.

counterflows_F are adjustments to firm Available Transfer Capability as determined by the Transmission Service Provider and specified in their ATCID.

- R8.** When calculating non-firm ATC for an ATC Path for a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider shall use the following algorithm: [*Violation Risk Factor: Lower*] [*Time Horizon: Operations Planning*]

$$ATC_{NF} = TTC - ETC_F - ETC_{NF} - CBM_S - TRM_U + Postbacks_{NF} + counterflows_{NF}$$

Where:

ATC_{NF} is the non-firm Available Transfer Capability for the ATC Path for that period.

TTC is the Total Transfer Capability of the ATC Path for that period.

ETC_F is the sum of existing firm commitments for the ATC Path during that period.

ETC_{NF} is the sum of existing non-firm commitments for the ATC Path during that period.

CBM_S is the Capacity Benefit Margin for the ATC Path that has been scheduled during that period.

TRM_U is the Transmission Reliability Margin for the ATC Path that has not been released for sale (unreleased) as non-firm capacity by the Transmission Service Provider during that period.

Postbacks_{NF} are changes to non-firm Available Transfer Capability due to a change in the use of Transmission Service for that period, as defined in Business Practices.

counterflows_{NF} are adjustments to non-firm Available Transfer Capability as determined by the Transmission Service Provider and specified in its ATCID.

C. Measures

- M1.** Each Transmission Operator that uses the Rated System Path Methodology shall produce any Transmission model it used to calculate TTC for purposes of calculating ATC for each ATC Path, as required in R1, for the time horizon(s) to be examined. (R1)
- M1.1.** Production shall be in the same form and format used by the Transmission Operator to calculate the TTC, as required in R1. (R1)
- M1.2.** The Transmission model produced must include the areas listed in R1.1.1 (or an equivalent representation, as described in the requirement) (R1.1)
- M1.3.** The Transmission model produced must show the use of the modeling parameters stated in R1.1.2 through R1.1.10; except that, no evidence shall be required to prove: 1) utilization of a Remedial Action Scheme where none was included in the model or 2) that no additions or retirements to the generation or Transmission system occurred. (R1.1.2 through R1.1.10)
- M1.4.** The Transmission Operator must provide evidence that the models used to determine TTC included Facility Ratings as provided by the Transmission Owner and Generator Owner. (R1.2)
- M2.** Each Transmission Operator that uses the Rated System Path Methodology shall produce the ATCID it uses to show where it has described and used additional modeling criteria in its ACTID that are not otherwise included in MOD-29 (R1.1.4, R.1.1.9, and R1.1.10).
- M3.** Each Transmission Operator that uses the Rated System Path Methodology with paths with ratings established prior to January 1, 1994 shall provide evidence the path and its rating were established prior to January 1, 1994. (R2.7)
- M4.** Each Transmission Operator that uses the Rated System Path Methodology shall produce as evidence the study reports, as required in R.2.8, for each path for which it determined TTC for the period examined. (R2)
- M5.** Each Transmission Operator shall provide evidence that it used the lesser of the calculated TTC or the SOL as the TTC, by producing: 1) all values calculated pursuant to R2 for each ATC Path, 2) Any corresponding SOLs for those ATC Paths, and 3) the TTC set by the Transmission Operator and given to the Transmission Service Provider for use in R7 and R8 for each ATC Path. (R3)
- M6.** Each Transmission Operator shall provide evidence (such as logs or data) that it provided the TTC and its study report to the Transmission Service Provider within seven calendar days of the finalization of the study report. (R4)
- M7.** The Transmission Service Provider shall demonstrate compliance with R5 by recalculating firm ETC for any specific time period as described in (MOD-001 R2), using the algorithm defined in R5 and with data used to calculate the specified value for the designated time period. The data used must meet the requirements specified in MOD-029-2 and the ATCID. To account for differences that may occur when recalculating the value (due to mixing automated and manual processes), any recalculated value that is within +/- 15% or 15 MW, whichever is greater, of the

originally calculated value, is evidence that the Transmission Service Provider used the algorithm in R5 to calculate its firm ETC. (R5)

- M8.** The Transmission Service Provider shall demonstrate compliance with R5 by recalculating non-firm ETC for any specific time period as described in (MOD-001 R2), using the algorithm defined in R6 and with data used to calculate this specified value for the designated time period. The data used must meet the requirements specified in the MOD-029 and the ATCID. To account for differences that may occur when recalculating the value (due to mixing automated and manual processes), any recalculated value that is within +/- 15% or 15 MW, whichever is greater, of the originally calculated value, is evidence that the Transmission Service Provider used the algorithm in R6 to calculate its non-firm ETC. (R6)
- M9.** Each Transmission Service Provider shall produce the supporting documentation for the processes used to implement the algorithm that calculates firm ATCs, as required in R7. Such documentation must show that only the variables allowed in R7 were used to calculate firm ATCs, and that the processes use the current values for the variables as determined in the requirements or definitions. Note that any variable may legitimately be zero if the value is not applicable or calculated to be zero (such as counterflows, TRM, CBM, etc...). The supporting documentation may be provided in the same form and format as stored by the Transmission Service Provider. (R7)
- M10.** Each Transmission Service Provider shall produce the supporting documentation for the processes used to implement the algorithm that calculates non-firm ATCs, as required in R8. Such documentation must show that only the variables allowed in R8 were used to calculate non-firm ATCs, and that the processes use the current values for the variables as determined in the requirements or definitions. Note that any variable may legitimately be zero if the value is not applicable or calculated to be zero (such as counterflows, TRM, CBM, etc...). The supporting documentation may be provided in the same form and format as stored by the Transmission Service Provider. (R8)

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

Regional Entity.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring Period and Reset Time Frame

Not applicable.

1.3. Data Retention

- The Transmission Operator and Transmission Service Provider shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation:
- The Transmission Operator shall have its latest models used to determine TTC for R1. (M1)

- The Transmission Operator shall have the current, in force ATCID(s) provided by its Transmission Service Provider(s) and any prior versions of the ATCID that were in force since the last compliance audit to show compliance with R1. (M2)
- The Transmission Operator shall retain evidence of any path and its rating that was established prior to January 1, 1994. (M3)
- The Transmission Operator shall retain the latest version and prior version of the TTC study reports to show compliance with R2. (M4)
- The Transmission Operator shall retain evidence for the most recent three calendar years plus the current year to show compliance with R3 and R4. (M5 and M6)
- The Transmission Service Provider shall retain evidence to show compliance in calculating hourly values required in R5 and R6 for the most recent 14 days; evidence to show compliance in calculating daily values required in R5 and R6 for the most recent 30 days; and evidence to show compliance in calculating daily values required in R5 and R6 for the most recent sixty days. (M7 and M8)
- The Transmission Service Provider shall retain evidence for the most recent three calendar years plus the current year to show compliance with R7 and R8. (M9 and M10)
- If a Transmission Service Provider or Transmission Operator is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until found compliant.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.4. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes:

The following processes may be used:

- Compliance Audits
- Self-Certifications
- Spot Checking
- Compliance Violation Investigations
- Self-Reporting
- Complaints

1.5. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1.	<p>The Transmission Operator used a model that met all but one of the modeling requirements specified in R1.1.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>The Transmission Operator utilized one to ten Facility Ratings that were different from those specified by a Transmission Owner or Generation Owner in their Transmission model. (R1.2)</p>	<p>The Transmission Operator used a model that met all but two of the modeling requirements specified in R1.1.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>The Transmission Operator utilized eleven to twenty Facility Ratings that were different from those specified by a Transmission Owner or Generation Owner in their Transmission model. (R1.2)</p>	<p>The Transmission Operator used a model that met all but three of the modeling requirements specified in R1.1.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>The Transmission Operator utilized twenty-one to thirty Facility Ratings that were different from those specified by a Transmission Owner or Generation Owner in their Transmission model. (R1.2)</p>	<p>The Transmission Operator used a model that did not meet four or more of the modeling requirements specified in R1.1.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>The Transmission Operator utilized more than thirty Facility Ratings that were different from those specified by a Transmission Owner or Generation Owner in their Transmission model. (R1.2)</p>
R2	<p>One or both of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Transmission Operator did not calculate TTC using one of the items in sub-requirements R2.1-R2.6. The Transmission Operator does not include one required item in the study report required in R2.8. 	<p>One or both of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Transmission Operator did not calculate TTC using two of the items in sub-requirements R2.1-R2.6. The Transmission Operator does not include two required items in the study report required in R2.8. 	<p>One or both of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Transmission Operator did not calculate TTC using three of the items in sub-requirements R2.1-R2.6. The Transmission Operator does not include three required items in the study report required in R2.8. 	<p>One or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Transmission Operator did not calculate TTC using four or more of the items in sub-requirements R2.1-R2.6. The Transmission Operator did not apply R2.7. The Transmission Operator does not include four or more required items in the study report required in R2.8

Standard MOD-029-2a — Rated System Path Methodology

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R3.	The Transmission Operator did not specify the TTC as the lesser of the TTC calculated using the process described in R2 or any associated SOL for more than zero ATC Paths, BUT, not more than 1% of all ATC Paths or 1 ATC Path (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Operator did not specify the TTC as the lesser of the TTC calculated using the process described in R2 or any associated SOL for more than 1% of all ATC Paths or 1 ATC Path (whichever is greater), BUT not more than 2% of all ATC Paths or 2 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Operator did not specify the TTC as the lesser of the TTC calculated using the process described in R2 or any associated SOL for more than 2% of all ATC Paths or 2 ATC Paths (whichever is greater), BUT not more than 5% of all ATC Paths or 3 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Operator did not specify the TTC as the lesser of the TTC calculated using the process described in R2 or any associated SOL, for more than 5% of all ATC Paths or 3 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).
R4.	The Transmission Operator provided the TTC and study report to the Transmission Service Provider more than seven, but not more than 14 calendar days after the report was finalized.	The Transmission Operator provided the TTC and study report to the Transmission Service Provider more than 14, but not more than 21 calendar days after the report was finalized.	The Transmission Operator provided the TTC and study report to the Transmission Service Provider more than 21, but not more than 28 calendar days after the report was finalized.	The Transmission Operator provided the TTC and study report to the Transmission Service Provider more than 28 calendar days after the report was finalized.
R5.	For a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider calculated a firm ETC with an absolute value different than that calculated in M7 for the same period, and the absolute value difference was more than 15% of the value calculated in the measure or 15MW, whichever is greater, but not more than 25% of the value calculated in the measure or 25MW, whichever is greater.	For a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider calculated a firm ETC with an absolute value different than that calculated in M7 for the same period, and the absolute value difference was more than 25% of the value calculated in the measure or 25MW, whichever is greater, but not more than 35% of the value calculated in the measure or 35MW, whichever is greater.	For a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider calculated a firm ETC with an absolute value different than that calculated in M7 for the same period, and the absolute value difference was more than 35% of the value calculated in the measure or 35MW, whichever is greater, but not more than 45% of the value calculated in the measure or 45MW, whichever is greater.	For a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider calculated a firm ETC with an absolute value different than that calculated in M7 for the same period, and the absolute value difference was more than 45% of the value calculated in the measure or 45MW, whichever is greater.

Standard MOD-029-2a — Rated System Path Methodology

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R6.	For a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider calculated a non-firm ETC with an absolute value different than that calculated in M8 for the same period, and the absolute value difference was more than 15% of the value calculated in the measure or 15MW, whichever is greater, but not more than 25% of the value calculated in the measure or 25MW, whichever is greater.	For a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider calculated a non-firm ETC with an absolute value different than that calculated in M8 for the same period, and the absolute value difference was more than 25% of the value calculated in the measure or 25MW, whichever is greater, but not more than 35% of the value calculated in the measure or 35MW, whichever is greater.	For a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider calculated a non-firm ETC with an absolute value different than that calculated in M8 for the same period, and the absolute value difference was more than 35% of the value calculated in the measure or 35MW, whichever is greater, but not more than 45% of the value calculated in the measure or 45MW, whichever is greater.	For a specified period, the Transmission Service Provider calculated a non-firm ETC with an absolute value different than that calculated in M8 for the same period, and the absolute value difference was more than 45% of the value calculated in the measure or 45MW, whichever is greater.
R7.	The Transmission Service Provider did not use all the elements defined in R7 when determining firm ATC, or used additional elements, for more than zero ATC Paths, but not more than 5% of all ATC Paths or 1 ATC Path (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Service Provider did not use all the elements defined in R7 when determining firm ATC, or used additional elements, for more than 5% of all ATC Paths or 1 ATC Path (whichever is greater), but not more than 10% of all ATC Paths or 2 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Service Provider did not use all the elements defined in R7 when determining firm ATC, or used additional elements, for more than 10% of all ATC Paths or 2 ATC Paths (whichever is greater), but not more than 15% of all ATC Paths or 3 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Service Provider did not use all the elements defined in R7 when determining firm ATC, or used additional elements, for more than 15% of all ATC Paths or more than 3 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).
R8.	The Transmission Service Provider did not use all the elements defined in R8 when determining non-firm ATC, or used additional elements, for more than zero ATC Paths, but not more than 5% of all ATC Paths or 1 ATC Path (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Service Provider did not use all the elements defined in R8 when determining non-firm ATC, or used additional elements, for more than 5% of all ATC Paths or 1 ATC Path (whichever is greater), but not more than 10% of all ATC Paths or 2 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Service Provider did not use all the elements defined in R8 when determining non-firm ATC, or used additional elements, for more than 10% of all ATC Paths or 2 ATC Paths (whichever is greater), but not more than 15% of all ATC Paths or 3 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).	The Transmission Service Provider did not use all the elements defined in R8 when determining non-firm ATC, or used additional elements, for more than 15% of all ATC Paths or more than 3 ATC Paths (whichever is greater).

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	8/26/2008	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
1a	11/05/2009	Board approved Interpretation of R5 and R6	Interpretation (Project 2009-15)
1a	February 28, 2014	Updated VSLs based on June 24, 2013 approval.	
2a	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
2a	November 19, 2015	FERC Order issued approving MOD-029-2a. Docket No. RM15-13-000.	

Appendix 1

Requirement Number and Text of Requirement
<p>MOD-001-01 Requirement R2:</p> <p>R2. Each Transmission Service Provider shall calculate ATC or AFC values as listed below using the methodology or methodologies selected by its Transmission Operator(s):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> R2.1. Hourly values for at least the next 48 hours. R2.2. Daily values for at least the next 31 calendar days. R2.3. Monthly values for at least the next 12 months (months 2-13). <p>MOD-001-01 Requirement R8:</p> <p>R8. Each Transmission Service Provider that calculates ATC shall recalculate ATC at a minimum on the following frequency, unless none of the calculated values identified in the ATC equation have changed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> R8.1. Hourly values, once per hour. Transmission Service Providers are allowed up to 175 hours per calendar year during which calculations are not required to be performed, despite a change in a calculated value identified in the ATC equation. R8.2. Daily values, once per day. R8.3. Monthly values, once per week.
Question #1
<p>Is the “advisory ATC” used under the NYISO tariff subject to the ATC calculation and recalculation requirements in MOD-001-1 Requirements R2 and R8? If not, is it necessary to document the frequency of “advisory” calculations in the responsible entity’s Available Transfer Capability Implementation Document?</p>
Response to Question #1
<p>Requirements R2 and R8 of MOD-001-1 are both related to Requirement R1, which defines that ATC methodologies are to be applied to specific “ATC Paths.” The NERC definition of ATC Path is “Any combination of Point of Receipt and Point of Delivery for which ATC is calculated; and any Posted Path.” Based on a review of the language included in this request, the NYISO Open Access Transmission Tariff, and other information posted on the NYISO Web site, it appears that the NYISO does indeed have multiple ATC Paths, which are subject to the calculation and recalculation requirements in Requirements R2 and R8. It appears from reviewing this information that ATC is defined in the NYISO tariff in the same manner in which NERC defines it, making it difficult to conclude that NYISO’s “advisory ATC” is not the same as ATC. In addition, it appears that pre-scheduling is permitted on certain external paths, making the calculation of ATC prior to day ahead necessary on those paths.</p>

The second part of NYISO’s question is only applicable if the first part was answered in the negative and therefore will not be addressed.

Requirement Number and Text of Requirement

MOD-029-2a Requirements R5 and R6:

R5. When calculating ETC for firm Existing Transmission Commitments (ETC_F) for a specified period for an ATC Path, the Transmission Service Provider shall use the algorithm below:

$$ETC_F = NL_F + NITS_F + GF_F + PTP_F + ROR_F + OS_F$$

Where:

NL_F is the firm capacity set aside to serve peak Native Load forecast commitments for the time period being calculated, to include losses, and Native Load growth, not otherwise included in Transmission Reliability Margin or Capacity Benefit Margin.

$NITS_F$ is the firm capacity reserved for Network Integration Transmission Service serving Load, to include losses, and Load growth, not otherwise included in Transmission Reliability Margin or Capacity Benefit Margin.

GF_F is the firm capacity set aside for grandfathered Transmission Service and contracts for energy and/or Transmission Service, where executed prior to the effective date of a Transmission Service Provider’s Open Access Transmission Tariff or “safe harbor tariff.”

PTP_F is the firm capacity reserved for confirmed Point-to-Point Transmission Service.

ROR_F is the firm capacity reserved for Roll-over rights for contracts granting Transmission Customers the right of first refusal to take or continue to take Transmission Service when the Transmission Customer’s Transmission Service contract expires or is eligible for renewal.

OS_F is the firm capacity reserved for any other service(s), contract(s), or agreement(s) not specified above using Firm Transmission Service as specified in the ATCID.

R6. When calculating ETC for non-firm Existing Transmission Commitments (ETC_{NF}) for all time horizons for an ATC Path the Transmission Service Provider shall use the following algorithm:

$$ETC_{NF} = NITS_{NF} + GF_{NF} + PTP_{NF} + OS_{NF}$$

Where:

$NITS_{NF}$ is the non-firm capacity set aside for Network Integration Transmission Service serving Load (i.e., secondary service), to include losses, and load growth not otherwise included in Transmission Reliability Margin or Capacity Benefit Margin.

GF_{NF} is the non-firm capacity set aside for grandfathered Transmission Service and contracts for energy and/or Transmission Service, where executed prior to the effective date of a Transmission Service Provider's Open Access Transmission Tariff or "safe harbor tariff."

PTP_{NF} is non-firm capacity reserved for confirmed Point-to-Point Transmission Service.

OS_{NF} is the non-firm capacity reserved for any other service(s), contract(s), or agreement(s) not specified above using non-firm transmission service as specified in the ATCID.

Question #2

Could OS_F in MOD-029-2a Requirement R5 and OS_{NF} in MOD-029-2a Requirement R6 be calculated using Transmission Flow Utilization in the determination of ATC?

Response to Question #2

This request for interpretation and the NYISO Open Access Transmission Tariff describe the NYISO's concept of "Transmission Flow Utilization;" however, it is unclear whether or not Native Load, Point-to-Point Transmission Service, Network Integration Transmission Service, or any of the other components explicitly defined in Requirements R5 and R6 are incorporated into "Transmission Flow Utilization." Provided that "Transmission Flow Utilization" does not include Native Load, Point-to-Point Transmission Service, Network Integration Transmission Service, or any of the other components explicitly defined in Requirements R5 and R6, it is appropriate to be included within the "Other Services" term. However, if "Transmission Flow Utilization" does incorporate those components, then simply including "Transmission Flow Utilization" in "Other Service" would be inappropriate.

Appendix MOD-029-2a-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard MOD-029-2a – Rated System Path Methodology

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.
4. **Applicability:**

The Facilities subject to this Standard are the Facilities of the Main Transmission System (RTP).

5. **Effective date:**

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.3. Effective date of the standard and
of this appendix in Québec: | Month xx, 20xx |

B. Requirements

No specific provisions.

C. Measures

Only this measure is modified:

- M8. The Transmission Service Provider shall demonstrate compliance with Requirement R6 by recalculating non-firm ETC for each specific time period as described in MOD-001 R2, using the algorithm defined in R6 and with data used to calculate this specified value for the designated time period. The data must meet the requirements specified in MOD-029 and ATCID. To account for differences that may occur when recalculating the value (due to mixing automated and manual processes), any recalculated value that is within $\pm 15\%$ or 15 MW, whichever is greater, of the originally calculated value is evidence that the Transmission Service Provider used the algorithm in R6 to calculate its non-firm ETC (R6).

D. Compliance

1. **Compliance Monitoring Process**

- 1.1. **Compliance Enforcement Authority**

In Québec, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means the Régie de l'énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

- 1.2. **Compliance Monitoring Period and Reset Time Frame**

No specific provisions.

- 1.3. **Data Retention**

Appendix MOD-029-2a-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard MOD-029-2a – Rated System Path Methodology

The seventh dash should read:

- The Transmission Service Provider shall retain evidence to show compliance in calculating hourly values required in R5 and R6 for the most recent 14 days; evidence to show compliance in calculating daily values required in R5 and R6 for the most recent 30 days, and evidence to show compliance in calculating monthly values required in R5 and R6 for the most recent 60 days (M7 and M8).

1.4. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Processes

The Régie de l'énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

1.5. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

2. Violation Severity Levels

No specific provisions.

Appendix 1

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** System Protection Coordination
2. **Number:** PRC-001-1.1(ii)
3. **Purpose:**
To ensure system protection is coordinated among operating entities.
4. **Applicability**
 - 4.1. Balancing Authorities
 - 4.2. Transmission Operators
 - 4.3. Generator Operators
5. **Effective Date:**
See the Implementation Plan for PRC-001-1.1(ii).

B. Requirements

- R1. Each Transmission Operator, Balancing Authority, and Generator Operator shall be familiar with the purpose and limitations of Protection System schemes applied in its area.
- R2. Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall notify reliability entities of relay or equipment failures as follows:
 - R2.1. If a protective relay or equipment failure reduces system reliability, the Generator Operator shall notify its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority. The Generator Operator shall take corrective action as soon as possible.
 - R2.2. If a protective relay or equipment failure reduces system reliability, the Transmission Operator shall notify its Reliability Coordinator and affected Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities. The Transmission Operator shall take corrective action as soon as possible.
- R3. A Generator Operator or Transmission Operator shall coordinate new protective systems and changes as follows.
 - R3.1. Each Generator Operator shall coordinate all new protective systems and all protective system changes with its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority.
 - Requirement R3.1 is not applicable to the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition.
 - R3.2. Each Transmission Operator shall coordinate all new protective systems and all protective system changes with neighboring Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities.

- R4.** Each Transmission Operator shall coordinate Protection Systems on major transmission lines and interconnections with neighboring Generator Operators, Transmission Operators, and Balancing Authorities.
- R5.** A Generator Operator or Transmission Operator shall coordinate changes in generation, transmission, load or operating conditions that could require changes in the Protection Systems of others:
 - R5.1.** Each Generator Operator shall notify its Transmission Operator in advance of changes in generation or operating conditions that could require changes in the Transmission Operator’s Protection Systems.
 - R5.2.** Each Transmission Operator shall notify neighboring Transmission Operators in advance of changes in generation, transmission, load, or operating conditions that could require changes in the other Transmission Operators’ Protection Systems.
- R6.** Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall monitor the status of each Special Protection System in their area, and shall notify affected Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities of each change in status.

C. Measures

- M1.** Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, revised fault analysis study, letters of agreement on settings, notifications of changes, or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that there was coordination of new protective systems or changes as noted in Requirements 3, 3.1, and 3.2.
- M2.** Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, documentation, electronic logs, computer printouts, or computer demonstration or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that it monitors the Special Protection Systems in its area. (Requirement 6 Part 1)
- M3.** Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall have and provide upon request evidence that could include but is not limited to, operator logs, phone records, electronic-notifications or other equivalent evidence that will be used to confirm that it notified affected Transmission Operator and Balancing Authorities of changes in status of one of its Special Protection Systems. (Requirement 6 Part 2)

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Monitoring Responsibility

Regional Reliability Organizations shall be responsible for compliance monitoring.

1.2. Compliance Monitoring and Reset Time Frame

One or more of the following methods will be used to assess compliance:

- Self-certification (Conducted annually with submission according to schedule.)
- Spot Check Audits (Conducted anytime with up to 30 days notice given to prepare.)
- Periodic Audit (Conducted once every three years according to schedule.)
- Triggered Investigations (Notification of an investigation must be made within 60 days of an event or complaint of noncompliance. The entity will have up to 30 days to prepare for the investigation. An entity may request an extension of the preparation period and the extension will be considered by the Compliance Monitor on a case-by-case basis.)

The Performance-Reset Period shall be 12 months from the last finding of non-compliance.

1.3. Data Retention

Each Generator Operator and Transmission Operator shall have current, in-force documents available as evidence of compliance for Measure 1.

Each Transmission Operator and Balancing Authority shall keep 90 days of historical data (evidence) for Measures 2 and 3.

If an entity is found non-compliant the entity shall keep information related to the noncompliance until found compliant or for two years plus the current year, whichever is longer.

Evidence used as part of a triggered investigation shall be retained by the entity being investigated for one year from the date that the investigation is closed, as determined by the Compliance Monitor,

The Compliance Monitor shall keep the last periodic audit report and all requested and submitted subsequent compliance records.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Levels of Non-Compliance for Generator Operators:

2.1. Level 1: Not applicable.

2.2. Level 2: Not applicable.

2.3. Level 3: Not applicable.

2.4. Level 4: Failed to provide evidence of coordination when installing new protective systems and all protective system changes with its Transmission Operator and Host Balancing Authority as specified in R3.1.

3. Levels of Non-Compliance for Transmission Operators:

3.1. Level 1: Not applicable.

3.2. Level 2: Not applicable.

3.3. Level 3: Not applicable.

3.4. Level 4: There shall be a separate Level 4 non-compliance, for every one of the following requirements that is in violation:

3.4.1 Failed to provide evidence of coordination when installing new protective systems and all protective system changes with neighboring Transmission Operators and Balancing Authorities as specified in R3.2.

3.4.2 Did not monitor the status of each Special Protection System, or did not notify affected Transmission Operators, Balancing Authorities of changes in special protection status as specified in R6.

4. Levels of Non-Compliance for Balancing Authorities:

4.1. Level 1: Not applicable.

4.2. Level 2: Not applicable.

4.3. Level 3: Not applicable.

4.4. Level 4: Did not monitor the status of each Special Protection System, or did not notify affected Transmission Operators, Balancing Authorities of changes in special protection status as specified in R6.

E. Regional Differences

None identified.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
0	August 8, 2005	Removed “Proposed” from Effective Date	Errata
0	August 25, 2005	Fixed Standard number in Introduction from PRC-001-1 to PRC-001-0	Errata
1	November 1, 2006	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Revised
1.1	April 11, 2012	Errata adopted by the Standards Committee; (Capitalized “Protection System” in accordance with Implementation Plan for Project 2007-17 approval of revised definition of “Protection System”)	Errata associated with Project 2007-17
1.1	September 9, 2013	Informational filing submitted to reflect the revised definition of Protection System in accordance with the Implementation Plan for the revised term.	

1.1(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
1.1(ii)	February 12, 2015	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 9, 2012	Adopted by Board of Trustees	Deleted Requirements R2, R5, and R6.
1.1(ii)	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-001-1.1(ii)	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for the Applicability Exclusion in Requirement R3.1

Coordination of new or changes to protective systems associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition are typically performed on the interconnecting facilities. New or changes to protective systems associated with these facilities should be coordinated with the TOP as these protective systems typically must be closely coordinated with the transmission protective systems to ensure the overall protection systems operates as designed. While the protective systems implemented on the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources at these dispersed power producing facilities (i.e. individual wind turbines or solar panels/inverters) may in some cases need to be coordinated with other protective systems within the same dispersed power producing facility, new or changes to these protective systems do not need to be coordinated with the

transmission protective systems, as this coordination would not provide reliability benefits to the BES.

Appendix PRC-001-1.1(ii)-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-001-1.1(ii) – System Protection Coordination

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.
4. **Applicability:**

The Facilities subject to this Standard are the Facilities of the Main Transmission System (RTP). This Standard also applies to non-RTP Facilities as specified in Requirements R3 (including parts R3.1 and R3.2) and R4.

5. **Effective date:**

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.3. Effective date of the standard and
of this appendix in Québec: | Month xx, 20xx |

B. Requirements

Protection coordination as described in Requirements R3 (including Parts R3.1 and R3.2) and R4 also covers:

- Failure protection (or backup or emergency protection) for every RTP Element that trips a non-RTP Element to which it connects, if such protection exists.
- Failure protection (or backup or emergency protection) for every non-RTP Element that trips an RTP Element, if such protection exists.

In Requirement R6, the term "Special Protection System (SPS)" must be replaced with the term "Remedial Action Scheme (RAS)."

C. Measures

In measures M2 and M3, the term "Special Protection System (SPS)" must be replaced with the term "Remedial Action Scheme (RAS)."

D. Compliance

1. **Compliance Monitoring Process**

- 1.1. **Compliance Monitoring Responsibility**

In Québec, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means the Régie de l'énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

- 1.2. **Compliance Monitoring and Reset Time Frame**

Appendix PRC-001-1.1(ii)-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-001-1.1(ii) – System Protection Coordination

No specific provisions.

1.3. Data Retention

No specific provisions.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

2. Levels of Non-Compliance for Generator Operators

No specific provisions.

3. Levels of Non-Compliance for Transmission Operators

In Part 3.4.2, the term “Special Protection System (SPS)” must be replaced with the term “Remedial Action Scheme (RAS).”

4. Levels of Non-Compliance for Balancing Authorities

In Part 4.4, the term “Special Protection System (SPS)” must be replaced with the term “Remedial Action Scheme (RAS).”

E. Regional Differences

No specific provisions.

Rationale

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction
2. **Number:** PRC-004-5(i)
3. **Purpose:** Identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for Bulk Electric System (BES) Elements.
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. **Functional Entities:**
 - 4.1.1 Transmission Owner
 - 4.1.2 Generator Owner
 - 4.1.3 Distribution Provider
 - 4.2. **Facilities:**
 - 4.2.1 Protection Systems for BES Elements, with the following exclusions:
 - 4.2.1.1 Non-protective functions that are embedded within a Protection System.
 - 4.2.1.2 Protective functions intended to operate as a control function during switching.¹
 - 4.2.1.3 Special Protection Systems (SPS).
 - 4.2.1.4 Remedial Action Schemes (RAS).
 - 4.2.1.5 Protection Systems of individual dispersed power producing resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition where the Misoperations affected an aggregate nameplate rating of less than or equal to 75 MVA of BES Facilities.
 - 4.2.2 Underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements.
 - 4.2.3 Undervoltage load shedding (UVLS) that is intended to trip one or more BES Elements.
5. **Effective Date:** See Project 2008-02.2 Implementation Plan.

¹ For additional information and examples, see the “Non-Protective Functions” and “Control Functions” sections in the Application Guidelines.

B. Requirements and Measures

- R1.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated under the circumstances in Parts 1.1 through 1.3 shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation: *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*
- 1.1** The BES interrupting device operation was caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate; and
 - 1.2** The BES interrupting device owner owns all or part of the Composite Protection System; and
 - 1.3** The BES interrupting device owner identified that its Protection System component(s) caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.
- M1.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified the Misoperation of its Protection System component(s), if any, that meet the circumstances in Requirement R1, Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R1, including Parts 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, Disturbance Monitoring Equipment (DME) records, test results, or transmittals.

- R2.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns a BES interrupting device that operated shall, within 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation, provide notification as described in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*
- 2.1** For a BES interrupting device operation by a Composite Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility for the Composite Protection System under the following circumstances:
- 2.1.1** The BES interrupting device owner shares the Composite Protection System ownership with any other owner; and
- 2.1.2** The BES interrupting device owner has determined that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation; and
- 2.1.3** The BES interrupting device owner has determined that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation.
- 2.2** For a BES interrupting device operation by a Protection System component intended to operate as backup protection for a condition on another entity's BES Element, notification of the operation shall be provided to the other Protection System owner(s) for which that backup protection was provided.
- M2.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates notification to the other owner(s), within the allotted time period for either Requirement R2, Part 2.1, including subparts 2.1.1, 2.1.2, and 2.1.3 and Requirement R2, Part 2.2. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R2, including Parts 2.1 and 2.2 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): emails, facsimiles, or transmittals.
- R3.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that receives notification, pursuant to Requirement R2 shall, within the later of 60 calendar days of notification or 120 calendar days of the BES interrupting device(s) operation, identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation. *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*
- M3.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation within the allotted time period. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R3 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, DME records, test results, or transmittals.

- R4.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that has not determined the cause(s) of a Misoperation, for a Misoperation identified in accordance with Requirement R1 or R3, shall perform investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation at least once every two full calendar quarters after the Misoperation was first identified, until one of the following completes the investigation: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Assessment, Operations Planning]*
- The identification of the cause(s) of the Misoperation; or
 - A declaration that no cause was identified.
- M4.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it performed at least one investigative action according to Requirement R4 every two full calendar quarters until a cause is identified or a declaration is made. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R4 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): reports, databases, spreadsheets, emails, facsimiles, lists, logs, records, declarations, analyses of sequence of events, relay targets, DME records, test results, or transmittals.
- R5.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that owns the Protection System component(s) that caused the Misoperation shall, within 60 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning]*
- Develop a Corrective Action Plan (CAP) for the identified Protection System component(s), and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations; or
 - Explain in a declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability, and that no further corrective actions will be taken.
- M5.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it developed a CAP and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to other Protection Systems and locations, or a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R5 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): CAP and evaluation, or declaration.
- R6.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall implement each CAP developed in Requirement R5, and update each CAP if actions or timetables change, until completed. *[Violation Risk Factor: High][Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning]*

- M6.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have dated evidence that demonstrates it implemented each CAP, including updating actions or timetables. Acceptable evidence for Requirement R6 may include, but is not limited to the following dated documentation (electronic or hardcopy format): records that document the implementation of each CAP and the completion of actions for each CAP including revision history of each CAP. Evidence may also include work management program records, work orders, and maintenance records.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” (CEA) means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the CEA may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its CEA to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, Measures M1, M2, M3, and M4 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following the completion of each Requirement.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R5, Measure M5, including any supporting analysis per Requirements R1, R2, R3, and R4, for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP, completion of each evaluation, and completion of each declaration.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall retain evidence of Requirement R6, Measure M6 for a minimum of 12 calendar months following completion of each CAP.

If a Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved, or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The CEA shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

D. Table of Compliance Elements

R#	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	High	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity identified whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R1.

R#	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R2	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	High	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 120 calendar days and less than or equal to 150 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 150 calendar days and less than or equal to 165 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 165 calendar days and less than or equal to 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation.	The responsible entity notified the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2, but in more than 180 calendar days of the BES interrupting device operation. OR The responsible entity failed to notify one or more of the other owner(s) of the Protection System component(s) in accordance with Requirement R2.

R#	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R3	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	High	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was less than or equal to 30 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 30 calendar days and less than or equal to 45 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 45 calendar days and less than or equal to 60 calendar days late.	The responsible entity identified whether or not its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation in accordance with Requirement R3, but was greater than 60 calendar days late. OR The responsible entity failed to identify whether or not a Misoperation of its Protection System component(s) occurred in accordance with Requirement R3.

R#	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	Operations Assessment, Operations Planning	High	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was less than or equal to one calendar quarter late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than one calendar quarter and less than or equal to two calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was greater than two calendar quarters and less than or equal to three calendar quarters late.	The responsible entity performed at least one investigative action in accordance with Requirement R4, but was more than three calendar quarters late. OR The responsible entity failed to perform investigative action(s) in accordance with Requirement R4.

R#	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	High	<p>The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>(See next page)</p>	<p>The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>(See next page)</p>	<p>The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>(See next page)</p>	<p>The responsible entity developed a CAP, or explained in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The responsible entity failed to develop a CAP or explain in a declaration in accordance with Requirement R5.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>(See next page)</p>

R#	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R5	(Continued)		The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 60 calendar days and less than or equal to 70 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 70 calendar days and less than or equal to 80 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 80 calendar days and less than or equal to 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation.	The responsible entity developed an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5, but in more than 90 calendar days of first identifying a cause of the Misoperation. OR The responsible entity failed to develop an evaluation in accordance with Requirement R5.
R6	Operations Planning, Long-Term Planning	High	The responsible entity implemented, but failed to update a CAP, when actions or timetables changed, in accordance with Requirement R6.	N/A	N/A	The responsible entity failed to implement a CAP in accordance with Requirement R6.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Interpretations

None.

G. Associated Documents

NERC System Protection and Controls Subcommittee of the NERC Planning Committee, Assessment of Standards: PRC-003-1 – Regional Procedure for Analysis of Misoperations of Transmission and Generation Protection Systems, PRC-004-1 – Analysis and Mitigation of Transmission and Generation Protection Misoperations, PRC-016-1 – Special Protection System Misoperations, May 22, 2009.²

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	April 1, 2005	Effective Date	New
1	December 1, 2005	1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to “en dash” (–) and “em dash (—).” 2. Added “periods” to items where appropriate. 3. Changed “Timeframe” to “Time Frame” in item D, 1.2.	01/20/06
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Project 2009-17 interpretation adding Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers
1a	September 26, 2011	Appended FERC-approved interpretation of R1 and R3 to version 1	FERC’s Order approving the interpretation of R1 and R3 is effective as of September 26, 2011

² (<http://www.nerc.com/comm/PC/System%20Protection%20and%20Control%20Subcommittee%20SPCS%20DL/PRC-003-004-016%20Report.pdf>).

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
2	August 5, 2010	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Project 2010-12 modifications to address Order No. 693 Directives contained in paragraph 1469
2a	September 26, 2011	Appended FERC-approved interpretation of R1 and R3 to version 2	FERC’s Order approving the interpretation of R1 and R3 is effective as of September 26, 2011
2.1a	February 9, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Errata change under Project 2010-07 to add “...and generator interconnection Facility...”
3	August 14, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Revision under Project 2010-05.1
4	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability revision under Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
5	May 7, 2015	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Revision under Project 2008-02.2
5(i)	June 22, 2015	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Revision to VRF designations from “Medium” to “High” for Requirements R1 through R6, in compliance with the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission’s directive in N. Am. Elec. Reliability Corp., 151 FERC ¶ 61,129 (2015)

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Introduction

This standard addresses the reliability issues identified in the letter³ from Gerry Cauley, NERC President and CEO, dated January 7, 2011.

“Nearly all major system failures, excluding perhaps those caused by severe weather, have misoperations of relays or automatic controls as a factor contributing to the propagation of the failure. ...Relays can misoperate, either operate when not needed or fail to operate when needed, for a number of reasons. First, the device could experience an internal failure – but this is rare. Most commonly, relays fail to operate correctly due to incorrect settings, improper coordination (of timing and set points) with other devices, ineffective maintenance and testing, or failure of communications channels or power supplies. Preventable errors can be introduced by field personnel and their supervisors or more programmatically by the organization.”

The standard also addresses the findings in the *2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance*⁴; July 2011.

“...a number of multiple outage events were initiated by protection system Misoperations. These events, which go beyond their design expectations and operating procedures, represent a tangible threat to reliability. A deeper review of the root causes of dependent and common mode events, which include three or more automatic outages, is a high priority for NERC and the industry.”

The *State of Reliability 2014*⁵ report continued to identify Protection System Misoperations as a significant contributor to automatic transmission outage severity. The report recommended completion of the development of PRC-004-3 as part of the solution to address Protection System Misoperations.

Definitions

The Misoperation definition is based on the IEEE/PSRC Working Group I3 “Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology⁶.” Misoperations of a Protection System include failure to operate, slowness in operating, or operating when not required either during a Fault or non-Fault condition.

³ (<http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Project%20201005%20Protection%20System%20Misoperations%20DL/20110209130708-Cauley%20letter.pdf>).

⁴ “2011 Risk Assessment of Reliability Performance.” NERC. (http://www.nerc.com/files/2011_RARPR_FINAL.pdf, July 2011). Pg. 3.

⁵ “State of Reliability 2014.” NERC. (<http://www.nerc.com/pa/Stand/Pages/ReliabilityCoordinationProject20066.aspx>). May 2014. Pg. 18 of 106.

⁶ “Transmission Protective Relay System Performance Measuring Methodology.” Working Group I3 of Power System Relaying Committee of IEEE Power Engineering Society. 1999.

For reference, a “Protection System” is defined in the *Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards* (“NERC Glossary”) as:

- Protective relays which respond to electrical quantities,
- Communications systems necessary for correct operation of protective functions,
- Voltage and current sensing devices providing inputs to protective relays,
- Station dc supply associated with protective functions (including station batteries, battery chargers, and non-battery-based dc supply), and
- Control circuitry associated with protective functions through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.

A BES interrupting device is a BES Element, typically a circuit breaker or circuit switcher that has the capability to interrupt fault current. Although BES interrupting device mechanisms are not part of a Protection System, the standard uses the operation of a BES interrupting device by a Protection System to initiate the review for Misoperation.

The following two definitions are being proposed for inclusion in the NERC Glossary:

Composite Protection System – *The total complement of Protection System(s) that function collectively to protect an Element. Backup protection provided by a different Element’s Protection System(s) is excluded.*

The Composite Protection System definition is based on the principle that an Element’s multiple layers of protection are intended to function collectively. This definition has been introduced in this standard and incorporated into the proposed definition of Misoperation to clarify that the overall performance of an Element’s total complement of protection should be considered while evaluating an operation.

Composite Protection System – Line Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha-Beta line (Circuit #123) is comprised of current differential, permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT), step distance (classic zone 1, zone 2, and zone 3), instantaneous-overcurrent, time-overcurrent, out-of-step, and overvoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha and Beta substations, and includes the associated relays, communications systems, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Transformer Example

The Composite Protection System of the Alpha transformer (#2) is comprised of internal differential, overall differential, instantaneous-overcurrent, and time-overcurrent protection. The protection is housed at the Alpha substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Generator Example

The Composite Protection System of the Beta generator (#3) is comprised of generator differential, overall differential, overcurrent, stator ground, reverse power, volts per hertz, loss-of-field, and undervoltage protection. The protection is housed at the Beta generating plant and at the Beta substation, and includes the associated relays, voltage and current sensing devices, DC supplies, and control circuitry.

Composite Protection System – Breaker Failure Example

Breaker failure protection provides backup protection for the breaker, and therefore is part of the breaker’s Composite Protection System. Considering breaker failure protection to be part of another Element’s Composite Protection System could lead to an incorrect conclusion that a breaker failure operation automatically satisfies the “Slow Trip” criteria of the Misoperation definition.

- An example of a correct operation of the breaker’s Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. The breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed trip coil. The failed trip coil caused a Misoperation of the line’s Composite Protection System.
- An example of a correct operation of the breaker’s Composite Protection System is when the breaker failure relaying tripped because the line relaying operated, but the breaker failed to clear the Fault. Only the breaker failure relaying operated because of a failed breaker mechanism. This was not a Misoperation because the breaker mechanism is not part of the breaker’s Composite Protection System.
- An example of an “Unnecessary Trip – During Fault” is when the breaker failure relaying tripped at the same time as the line relaying during a Fault. The Misoperation was due to the breaker failure timer being set to zero.

Misoperation – *The failure a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. Any of the following is a Misoperation:*

- 1. Failure to Trip – During Fault** – *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a Fault condition for which it is designed. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*
- 2. Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault** – *A failure of a Composite Protection System to operate for a non-Fault condition for which it is designed, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation. The failure of a Protection System component is not a Misoperation as long as the performance of the Composite Protection System is correct.*

3. **Slow Trip – During Fault** – *A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a Fault condition if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System.*
4. **Slow Trip – Other Than Fault** – *A Composite Protection System operation that is slower than required for a non-Fault condition, such as a power swing, undervoltage, overexcitation, or loss of excitation, if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System.*
5. **Unnecessary Trip – During Fault** – *An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a Fault condition on another Element.*
6. **Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault** – *An unnecessary Composite Protection System operation for a non-Fault condition. A Composite Protection System operation that is caused by personnel during on-site maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activities is not a Misoperation.*

The Misoperation definition is based on the principle that an Element’s total complement of protection is intended to operate dependably and securely.

- Failure to automatically reclose after a Fault condition is not included as a Misoperation because reclosing equipment is not included within the definition of Protection System.
- A breaker failure operation does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.
- A remote backup operation resulting from a “Failure to Trip” or a “Slow Trip” does not, in itself, constitute a Misoperation.

This proposed definition of Misoperation provides additional clarity over the current version. A Misoperation is the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate as intended for protection purposes. The definition includes six categories which provide further differentiation of what constitutes a Misoperation. These categories are discussed in greater detail in the following sections.

Failure to Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in the Fault condition being cleared by remote backup Protection System operation.

Example 1a: A failure of a transformer's Composite Protection System to operate for a transformer Fault is a Misoperation.

Example 1b: A failure of a "primary" transformer relay (or any other component) to operate for a transformer Fault is not a “Failure to Trip – During Fault” Misoperation as long as another component of the transformer's Composite Protection System operated.

Example 1c: A lack of target information does not by itself constitute a Misoperation. When a high-speed pilot system does not target because a high-speed zone element trips first, it would not in and of itself be a Misoperation.

Example 1d: A failure of an overall differential relay to operate is not a “Failure to Trip – During Fault” Misoperation as long as another component such as a generator differential relay operated.

Example 1e: The Composite Protection System for a bus does not operate during a bus Fault which results in the operation of all local transformer Protection Systems connected to that bus and all remote line Protection Systems connected to that bus isolating the faulted bus from the grid. The operation of the local transformer Protection Systems and the operation of all remote line Protection Systems correctly provided backup protection. There is one “Failure to Trip – During Fault” Misoperation of the bus Composite Protection System.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the “Slow Trip – During Fault” category applies to the operation.

Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault

This category of Misoperation may have resulted in operator intervention. The “Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault” conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Example 2a: A failure of a generator's Composite Protection System to operate for an unintentional loss of field condition is a Misoperation.

Example 2b: A failure of an overexcitation relay (or any other component) is not a "Failure to Trip – Other Than Fault" Misoperation as long as the generator's Composite Protection System operated as intended isolating the generator from the BES.

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider whether the “Slow Trip – Other Than Fault” category applies to the operation.

Slow Trip – During Fault

This category of Misoperation typically results in remote backup Protection System operation before the Fault is cleared.

Example 3a: A Composite Protection System that is slower than required for a Fault condition is a Misoperation if the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element’s Composite Protection System. The current differential element of a multiple function relay failed to operate for a line Fault. The same relay's time-overcurrent element operated after a time delay. However, an adjacent line also operated from a time-overcurrent element. The faulted line's time-overcurrent element was found to be set to trip too slowly.

Example 3b: A failure of a breaker's Composite Protection System to operate as quickly as intended to meet the expected critical Fault clearing time for a line Fault in conjunction with a breaker failure (i.e., stuck breaker) is a Misoperation if it resulted in an unintended operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. If a generating unit's Composite Protection System operates due to instability caused by the slow trip of the breaker's Composite Protection System, it is not an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the generating unit's Composite Protection System. This event would be a "Slow Trip – During Fault" Misoperation of the breaker's Composite Protection System.

Example 3c: A line connected to a generation interconnection station is protected with two independent high-speed pilot systems. The Composite Protection System for this line also includes step distance and time-overcurrent schemes in addition to the two pilot systems. During a Fault on this line, the two pilot systems fail to operate and the time-overcurrent scheme operates clearing the Fault with no generating units or other Elements tripping (i.e., no over-trips). This event is not a Misoperation.

The phrase "slower than required" means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

The phrase "resulted in the operation of any other Composite Protection System" refers to the need to ensure that relaying operates in the proper or planned sequence (i.e., the primary relaying for a faulted Element operates before the remote backup relaying for the faulted Element).

In analyzing the Protection System for Misoperation, the entity must also consider the "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" category to determine if an "unnecessary trip" applies to the Protection System operation of an Element other than the faulted Element.

If a coordination error was at the local terminal (i.e., set too slow), then it was a "Slow Trip," category of Misoperation at the local terminal.

Slow Trip – Other Than Fault

The phrase "slower than required" means the duration of its operating time resulted in the operation of at least one other Element's Composite Protection System. It would be impractical to provide a precise tolerance in the definition that would be applicable to every type of Protection System. Rather, the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation should understand whether the speed and outcome of its Protection System operation met their objective. The intent is not to require documentation of exact Protection System operation

times, but to assure consideration of relay coordination and system stability by the owner(s) reviewing each Protection System operation.

Example 4: A phase to phase fault occurred on the terminals of a generator. The generator's Composite Protection System and a transmission line's Composite Protection System both operated in response to the fault. It was found during subsequent investigation that the generator protection contained an inappropriate time delay. This caused the transmission line's correctly set overreaching zone of protection to operate. This was a Misoperation of the generator's Composite Protection System, but not of the transmission line's Composite Protection System.

The "Slow Trip – Other Than Fault" conditions cited in the definition are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list.

Unnecessary Trip – During Fault

An operation of a properly coordinated remote Protection System is not in and of itself a Misoperation if the Fault has persisted for a sufficient time to allow the correct operation of the Composite Protection System of the faulted Element to clear the Fault. A BES interrupting device failure, a "failure to trip" Misoperation, or a "slow trip" Misoperation may result in a proper remote Protection System operation.

Example 5: An operation of a transformer's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared line Fault is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted equipment's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying) without the need for an external Protection System operation resulting in an unnecessary trip of the transformer protection; therefore, the transformer Protection System operation is a Misoperation.

Example 5b: An operation of a line's Composite Protection System which trips (i.e., over-trips) for a properly cleared Fault on a different line is a Misoperation. The Fault is cleared properly by the faulted line's Composite Protection System (i.e., line relaying); however, elsewhere in the system, a carrier blocking signal is not transmitted (e.g., carrier ON/OFF switch found in OFF position) resulting in the operation of a remote Protection System, single-end trip of a non-faulted line. The operation of the Protection System for the non-faulted line is an unnecessary trip during a Fault. Therefore, the non-faulted line Protection System operation is an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" Misoperation.

Example 5c: If a coordination error was at the remote terminal (i.e., set too fast), then it was an "Unnecessary Trip – During Fault" category of Misoperation at the remote terminal.

Unnecessary Trip – Other Than Fault

Unnecessary trips for non-Fault conditions include but are not limited to: power swings, overexcitation, loss of excitation, frequency excursions, and normal operations.

Example 6a: An operation of a line's Composite Protection System due to a relay failure during normal operation is a Misoperation.

Example 6b: Tripping a generator by the operation of the loss of field protection during an off-nominal frequency condition while the field is intact is a Misoperation assuming the Composite Protection System was not intended to operate under this condition.

Example 6c: An impedance line relay trip for a power swing that entered the relay's characteristic is a Misoperation if the power swing was stable and the relay operated because power swing blocking was enabled and should have prevented the trip, but did not.

Example 6d: Tripping a generator operating at normal load by the operation of a reverse power protection relay due to a relay failure is a Misoperation.

Additionally, an operation that occurs during a non-Fault condition but was initiated directly by on-site (i.e., real-time) maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning is not a Misoperation.

Example 6e: A BES interrupting device operation that occurs at the remote end of a line during a non-Fault condition because a direct transfer trip was initiated by system maintenance and testing activities at the local end of the line is not a Misoperation because of the maintenance exclusion in category 6 of the definition of "Misoperation."

The "on-site" activities at one location that initiates a trip to another location are included in this exemption. This includes operation of a Protection System when energizing equipment to facilitate measurements, such as verification of current circuits as a part of performing commissioning; however, once the maintenance, testing, inspection, construction, or commissioning activity associated with the Protection System is complete, the "on-site" Misoperation exclusion no longer applies, regardless of the presence of on-site personnel.

Special Cases

Protection System operations for these cases would not be a Misoperation.

Example 7a: A generator Protection System operation prior to closing the unit breaker(s) is not a Misoperation provided no in-service Elements are tripped.

This type of operation is not a Misoperation because the generating unit is not synchronized and is isolated from the BES. Protection System operations that occur when the protected Element is out of service and that do not trip any in-service Elements are not Misoperations.

In some cases where zones of protection overlap, the owner(s) of Elements may decide to allow a Protection System to operate faster in order to gain better overall Protection System performance for an Element.

Example 7b: The high-side of a transformer connected to a line may be within the zone of protection of the supplying line's relaying. In this case, the line relaying is planned to protect the area of the high-side of the transformer and into its primary winding. In order to provide faster protection for the line, the line relaying may be designed and set to operate without direct coordination (or coordination is waived) with local protection for Faults on the high-side of the connected transformer. Therefore, the operation of the line relaying for a high-side transformer Fault operated as intended and would not be a Misoperation.

Below are examples of conditions that would be a Misoperation.

Example 7c: A 230 kV shunt capacitor bank was released for operational service. The capacitor bank trips due to a settings error in the capacitor bank differential relay upon energization.

Example 7d: A 230/115 kV BES transformer bank trips out when being re-energized due to an incorrect operation of the transformer differential relay for inrush after being released for operational service. Only the high-side breaker opens since the low-side breaker had not yet been closed.

Non-Protective Functions

BES interrupting device operations which are initiated by non-protective functions, such as those associated with generator controls, excitation controls, or turbine/boiler controls, static voltampere-reactive compensators (SVC), flexible ac transmission systems (FACTS), high-voltage dc (HVdc) transmission systems, circuit breaker mechanisms, or other facility control systems are not operations of a Protection System. The standard is not applicable to non-protective functions such as automation (e.g., data collection) or control functions that are embedded within a Protection System.

Control Functions

The entity must make a determination as to whether the standard is applicable to each operation of its Protection System in accordance with the provided exclusions in the standard's Applicability, see Section 4.2.1. The subject matter experts (SME) developing this standard recognize that entities use Protection Systems as part of a routine practice to control BES Elements. This standard is not applicable to operation of protective functions within a Protection System when intended for controlling a BES Element as a part of an entity's process or planned switching sequence. The following are examples of conditions to which this standard is not applicable:

Example 8a: The reverse power protective function that operates to remove a generating unit from service using the entity's normal or routine process.

Example 8b: The reverse power relay enables a permissive trip and the generator operator trips the unit.

The standard is not applicable to operation of the protective relay because its operation is intended as a control function as part of a controlled shutdown sequence for the generator. However, the standard remains applicable to operation of the reverse power relay when it operates for conditions not associated with the controlled shutdown sequence, such as a motoring condition caused by a trip of the prime mover.

The following is another example of a condition to which this standard is not applicable:

Example 8c: Operation of a capacitor bank interrupting device for voltage control using functions embedded within a microprocessor based relay that is part of a Protection System.

The above are examples only, and do not constitute an all-inclusive list to which the standard is not applicable.

Extenuating Circumstances

In the event of a natural disaster or other extenuating circumstances, the December 20, 2012 Sanction Guidelines of the North American Electric Reliability Corporation, Section 2.8, Extenuating Circumstances, reads: “In unique extenuating circumstances causing or contributing to the violation, such as significant natural disasters, NERC or the Regional Entity may significantly reduce or eliminate Penalties.” The Regional Entities to whom NERC has delegated authority will consider extenuating circumstances when considering any sanctions in relation to the timelines outlined in this standard.

The volume of Protection System operations tend to be sporadic. If a high rate of Protection System operations is not sustained, utilities will have an opportunity to catch up within the 120 day period.

Requirement Time Periods

The time periods within all the Requirements are distinct and separate. The applicable entity in Requirement R1 has 120 calendar days to identify whether a BES interrupting device operation is a Misoperation. Once the applicable entity has identified a Misoperation, it has completed its performance under Requirement R1. Identified Misoperations without an identified cause become subject to Requirement R4 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary. Identified Misoperations with an identified cause become subject to Requirement R5 and any subsequent Requirements as necessary.

In Requirement R2, the applicable entity has 120 calendar days, based on the date of the BES interrupting device operation, to provide notification to the other Protection System owners that meet the circumstances in Parts 2.1 and 2.2. For the case of an applicable entity that was notified (R3), it has the later of 120 calendar days from the date of the BES interrupting device operation or 60 calendar days of notification to identify whether its Protection System components caused a Misoperation.

Once a Misoperation is identified in either Requirement R1 or R3, and the applicable entity did not identify the cause(s) of the Misoperation, the time period for performing at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters begins. The time period(s) in Requirement R4 resets upon each period. When the applicable entity's investigative actions identify the cause of the identified Misoperation or the applicable entity declares that no cause was found, the applicable entity has completed its performance in Requirement R4.

The time period in Requirement R5 begins when the Misoperation cause is first identified. The applicable entity is allotted 60 calendar days to perform one of the two activities listed in Requirement R5 (e.g., CAP or declaration) to complete its performance under Requirement R5.

Requirement R6 time period is determined by the actions and the associated timetable to complete those actions identified in the CAP. The time periods contained in the CAP may change from time to time and the applicable entity is required to update the timetable when it changes.

Time periods provided in the Requirements are intended to provide a reasonable amount of time to perform each Requirement. Performing activities in the least amount of time facilitates prompt identification of Misoperations, notification to other Protection System owners, identification of the cause(s), correction of the cause(s), and that important information is retained that may be lost due to time.

Requirement R1

This Requirement initiates a review of each BES interrupting device operation to identify whether or not a Misoperation may have occurred. Since the BES interrupting device owner typically monitors and tracks device operations, the owner is the logical starting point for identifying Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements. A review is required when (1) a BES interrupting device operates that is caused by a Protection System or by manual intervention in response to a Protection System failure to operate, (2) regardless of whether the owner owns all or part of the Protection System component(s), and (3) the owner identified its Protection System component(s) as causing the BES interrupting device operation or was caused by manual intervention in response to its Protection System failure to operate.

Since most Misoperations result in the operation of one or more BES interrupting devices, these operations initiate a review to identify any Misoperation. If an Element is manually isolated in response to a failure to operate, the manual isolation of the Element triggers a review for Misoperation.

Example R1a: The failure of a loss of field relay on a generating unit where an operator takes action to isolate the unit.

Manual intervention may indicate a Misoperation has occurred, thus requiring the initiation of an investigation by the BES interrupting device owner.

For the case where a BES interrupting device did not operate and remote clearing occurs due to the failure of a Composite Protection System to operate, the BES interrupting device owner would still review the operation under Requirement R1. However, if the BES interrupting device

owner determines that its Protection System component operated as backup protection for a condition on another entity’s BES Element, the owner would provide notification of the operation to the other Protection System owner(s) under Requirement R2, Part 2.2.

Protection Systems are made of many components. These components may be owned by different entities. For example, a Generator Owner may own a current transformer that sends information to a Transmission Owner’s differential relay. All of these components and many more are part of a Protection System. It is expected that all of the owners will communicate with each other, sharing information freely, so that Protection System operations can be analyzed, Misoperations identified, and corrective actions taken.

Each entity is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation regardless of the level of ownership. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems, or DME would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion. In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation. The entity is allotted 120 calendar days from the date of its BES interrupting device operation to identify whether its Protection System component(s) caused a Misoperation.

The Protection System operation may be documented in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System.

Repeated operations which occur during the same automatic reclosing sequence do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. Repeated Misoperations which occur during the same 24-hour period do not need a separate identification under Requirement R1. This is consistent with the NERC *Misoperations Report*⁷ which states:

“In order to avoid skewing the data with these repeated events, the NERC SPCS should clarify, in the next annual update of the misoperation template, that all misoperations due to the same equipment and cause within a 24 hour period be recorded as one misoperation.”

The following is an example of a condition that is not a Misoperation.

⁷ “Misoperations Report.” Reporting Multiple Occurrences. NERC Protection System Misoperations Task Force. (http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf). April 1, 2013. Pg. 37 of 40.

Example R1b: A high impedance Fault occurs within a transformer. The sudden pressure relaying detects and operates for the Fault, but the differential relaying did not operate due to the low Fault current levels. This is not a Misoperation because the Composite Protection System was not required to operate because the Fault was cleared by the sudden pressure relay.

Requirement R2

Requirement R2 ensures notification of those who have a role in identifying Misoperations, but were not accounted for within Requirement R1. In the case of multi-entity ownership, the entity that owns the BES interrupting device that operated is expected to use judgment to identify those Protection System operations that meet the definition of Misoperation under Requirement R1; however, if the entity that owns a BES interrupting device determines that its Protection System component(s) did not cause the BES interrupting device(s) operation or cannot determine whether its Protection System components caused the BES interrupting device(s) operation, it must notify the other Protection System owner(s) that share Misoperation identification responsibility when the criteria in Requirement R2 is met.

This Requirement does not preclude the Protection System owners from initially communicating and working together to determine whether a Misoperation occurred and, if so, the cause. The BES interrupting device owner is only required to officially notify the other owners when it: (1) shares the Composite Protection System ownership with other entity(ies), (2) determines that a Misoperation occurred or cannot rule out a Misoperation, and (3) determines its Protection System component(s) did not cause a Misoperation or is unsure. Officially notifying the other owners without performing a preliminary review may unnecessarily burden the other owners with compliance obligations under Requirement R3, redirect valuable resources, and add little benefit to reliability. The BES interrupting device owner should officially notify other owners when appropriate within the established time period.

The following is an example of a notification to another Protection System owner:

Example R2a: Circuit breakers A and B at the Charlie station tripped from directional comparison blocking (DCB) relaying on 03/03/2014 at 15:43 UTC during an external Fault. As discussed last week, the fault records indicate that a problem with your equipment (failure to transmit) caused the operation.

Example R2b: A generator unit tripped out immediately upon synchronizing to the grid due to a Misoperation of its overcurrent protection. The Transmission Owner owns the 230 kV generator breaker that operated. The Transmission Owner, as the owner of the BES interrupting device after determining that its Protection System components did not cause the Misoperation, notified the Generator Owner of the operation. The Generator Owner investigated and determined that its Protection System components caused the Misoperation. In this example, the Generator Owner's Protection System components did cause the Misoperation. As the owner of the Protection System components that caused the Misoperation, the Generator Owner is responsible for creating and implementing the CAP.

A Composite Protection System owned by different functional entities within the same registered entity does not necessarily satisfy the notification criteria in Part 2.1.1 of Requirement R2. For example, if the same personnel within a registered entity perform the Misoperation identification for both the Generator Owner and Transmission Owner functions, then the Misoperation identification would be completely covered in Requirement R1, and therefore notification would not be required. However, if the Misoperation identification is handled by different groups, then notification would be required because the Misoperation identification would not necessarily be covered in Requirement R1.

Example R2c: Line A Composite Protection System (owned by entity 1) failed to operate for an internal Fault. As a result, the zone 3 portion of Line B's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 2) and zone 3 portion of Line C's Composite Protection System (owned by entity 3) operated to clear the Fault. Entity 2 and 3 notified entity 1 of the remote zone 3 operation.

For the case where a BES interrupting device operates to provide backup protection for a non-BES Element, the entity reviewing the operation is not required to notify the other owners of Protection Systems for non-BES Elements. No notification is required because this Reliability Standard is not applicable to Protection Systems for non-BES Elements.

Requirement R3

For Requirement R3 (i.e., notification received), the entity that also owns a portion of the Composite Protection System is expected to use judgment to identify whether the Protection System operation is a Misoperation. A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, and information from the other owner(s) would typically be used to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The intent of the standard is to classify an operation as a Misoperation if the available information leads to that conclusion. In many cases, it will not be necessary to leverage all available data to determine whether or not a Misoperation occurred. The standard also allows an entity to classify an operation as a Misoperation if an entity is not sure. The entity may decide to identify the operation as a Misoperation to satisfy Requirement R1 and continue its investigation for a cause of the Misoperation under Requirement R4. If the continued investigative actions are inconclusive, the entity may declare no cause found and end its investigation.

The entity that is notified by the BES interrupting device owner is allotted the later of 60 calendar days from receipt of notification or 120 calendar days from the BES interrupting device operation date to determine if its portion of the Composite Protection System caused the Protection System operation. It is expected that in most cases of a jointly owned Protection System, the entity making notification would have been in communication with the other owner(s) early in the process. This means that the shorter 60 calendar days only comes into play if the notification occurs in the second half of the 120 calendar days allotted to the BES interrupting device owner in Requirement R1.

The Protection System review may be organized in a variety of ways such as in a report, database, spreadsheet, or list. The documentation may be organized in a variety of ways such as by BES interrupting device, protected Element, or Composite Protection System. The BES interrupting device owner's notification received may be documented in a variety of ways such as an email or a facsimile.

Requirement R4

The entity in Requirement R4 (i.e., cause identification), whether it is the entity that owns the BES interrupting device or an entity that was notified, is expected to use due diligence in taking investigative action(s) to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation for its portion of the Composite Protection System. The SMEs developing this standard recognize there will be cases where the cause(s) of a Misoperation will not be revealed during the allotted time periods in Requirements R1 or R3; therefore, Requirement R4 provides the entity a mechanism to continue its investigative work to determine the cause(s) of the Misoperation when the cause is not known.

A combination of available information from resources such as counters, relay targets, SCADA, DME, test results, and studies would typically be used to determine the cause of the Misoperation. At least one investigative action must be performed every two full calendar quarters until the investigation is completed.

The following is an example of investigative actions taken to determine the cause of an identified Misoperation:

Example R4a: A Misoperation was identified on 03/18/2014. A line outage to test the Protection System was scheduled on 03/24/2014 for 12/15/2014 as the first investigative action (i.e., beyond the next two full calendar quarters) due to summer peak conditions. The protection engineer contacted the manufacturer on 04/10/2014 (i.e., within two full calendar quarters) to obtain any known issues. The engineer reviewed manufacturer's documents on 05/27/2014. The outage schedule was confirmed on 08/29/2014 and was taken on 12/15/2014. Testing was completed on 12/16/2014 (i.e., in the second two full quarters) revealing the microprocessor relay as the cause of the Misoperation. A CAP is being developed to replace the relay.

Periodic action minimizes compliance burdens and focuses the entity's effort on determining the cause(s) of the Misoperation while providing measurable evidence. The SMEs recognize

that certain planned investigative actions may require months or years to schedule and complete; therefore, the entity is only required to perform at least one investigative action every two full calendar quarters. If an investigative action is performed in the first quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the third calendar quarter. If an investigative action is performed in the last quarter of a calendar year, the next investigative action would need to be performed by the end of the second calendar quarter of the following calendar year. Investigative actions may include a variety of actions, such as reviewing DME records, performing or reviewing studies, completing relay calibration or testing, requesting manufacturer review, requesting an outage, or confirming a schedule.

The entity's investigation is complete when it identifies the cause of the Misoperation or makes a declaration that no cause was determined. The declaration is intended to be used if the entity determines that investigative actions have been exhausted or have not provided direction for identifying the Misoperation cause. Historically, approximately 12% of Misoperations are unknown or unexplainable.⁸

Although the entity only has to document its specific investigative actions taken to determine the cause(s) of an identified Misoperation, the entity should consider the benefits of formally organizing (e.g., in a report or database) its actions and findings. Well documented investigative actions and findings may be helpful in future investigations of a similar event or circumstances. A thorough report or database may contain a detailed description of the event, information gathered, investigative actions, findings, possible causes, identified causes, and conclusions. Multiple owners of a Composite Protection System might consider working together to produce a common report for their mutual benefit.

The following are examples of a declaration where no cause was determined:

Example R4b: A Misoperation was identified on 04/11/2014. All relays at station A and B functioned properly during testing on 08/26/2014 as the first investigative action. The carrier system functioned properly during testing on 08/27/2014. The carrier coupling equipment functioned properly during testing on 08/28/2014. A settings review completed on 09/03/2014 indicated the relay settings were proper. Since the equipment involved in the operation functioned properly during testing, the settings were reviewed and found to be correct, and the equipment at station A and station B is already monitored. The investigation is being closed because no cause was found.

Example R4c: A Misoperation was identified on 03/22/2014. The protection scheme was replaced before the cause was identified. The power line carrier or PLC based protection was replaced with fiber-optic based protection with an in-service date of 04/16/2014. The new system will be monitored for recurrence of the Misoperation.

⁸ NERC System Protection and Control Subcommittee. Misoperations Report. April 1, 2013. (http://www.nerc.com/docs/pc/psmtf/PSMTF_Report.pdf). Figure 15: NERC Wide Misoperations by Cause Code. Pg. 22 of 40.

Requirement R5

Resolving the causes of Protection System Misoperations benefits BES reliability by preventing recurrence. The Corrective Action Plan (CAP) is an established tool for resolving operational problems. The NERC Glossary defines a Corrective Action Plan as, *"A list of actions and an associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem."* Since a CAP addresses specific problems, the determination of what went wrong needs to be completed before developing a CAP. When the Misoperation cause is identified in Requirement R1, R3 or R4, Requirement R5 requires Protection System owner(s) to develop a CAP, or explain why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability. The entity must develop the CAP or make a declaration why additional actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken within 60 calendar days of first determining a cause.

The SMEs developing this standard recognize there may be multiple causes for a Misoperation. In these circumstances, the CAP would include a remedy for the identified causes. The CAP may be revised if additional causes are found; therefore, the entity has the option to create a single or multiple CAP(s) to correct multiple causes of a Misoperation. The 60 calendar day period for developing a CAP (or declaration) is established on the basis of industry experience which includes operational coordination timeframes, time to consider alternative solutions, coordination of resources, and development of a schedule.

The development of a CAP is intended to document the specific corrective actions needed to be taken to prevent Misoperation recurrence, the timetable for executing such actions, and an evaluation of the CAP's applicability to the entity's other Protection Systems including other locations. The evaluation of these other Protection Systems aims to reduce the risk and likelihood of similar Misoperations in other Protection Systems. The Protection System owner is responsible for determining the extent of its evaluation concerning other Protection Systems and locations. The evaluation may result in the owner including actions to address Protection Systems at other locations or the reasoning for not taking any action. The CAP and an evaluation of other Protection Systems including other locations must be developed to complete Requirement R5.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined capacitor replacement was not necessary.

For completion of each CAP in Examples R5a through R5d, please see Examples R6a through R6d.

Example R5a: Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.

Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay has not been experiencing problems and is systematically being replaced with microprocessor relays as Protection Systems are modernized. Therefore, it was assessed that a program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay does not need to be established for the system.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

Example R5b: Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.

Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, a program should be established by 12/01/2014 for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip due to a failed capacitor within the relay and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the capacitors need preemptive correction action.

Example R5c: Actions: Remove the relay from service. Replace capacitor in the relay. Test the relay. Return to service or replace by 07/01/2014.

Applicability to other Protection Systems: This type of impedance relay is suspected to have previously tripped at other locations because of the same type of capacitor issue. Based on the evaluation, the preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay should be pursued for the identified stations A through I by 04/30/2015.

A plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations A, B, and C by 09/01/2014. A second plan is being developed to replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations D, E, and F by 11/01/2014. The last plan will replace the impedance relay capacitors at stations G, H, and I by 02/01/2015.

The following is an example of a CAP for a relay Misoperation that was due to a version 2 firmware problem and the evaluation of the cause at similar locations which determined the firmware needs preemptive correction action.

Example R5d: Actions: Provide the manufacturer fault records. Install new firmware pending manufacturer results by 10/01/2014.

Applicability to other Protection Systems: Based on the evaluation of other locations and a risk assessment, the newer firmware version 3 should be installed at all installations that are identified to be version 2. Twelve relays were identified across the system. Proposed completion date is 12/31/2014.

The following are examples of a declaration made where corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability and that no further corrective actions will be taken.

Example R5e: The cause of the Misoperation was due to a non-registered entity communications provider problem.

Example R5f: The cause of the Misoperation was due to a transmission transformer tapped industrial customer who initiated a direct transfer trip to a registered entity's transmission breaker.

In situations where a Misoperation cause emanates from a non-registered outside entity, there may be limited influence an entity can exert on an outside entity and is considered outside of an entity's control.

The following are examples of declarations made why corrective actions would not improve BES reliability.

Example R5g: The investigation showed that the Misoperation occurred due to transients associated with energizing transformer ABC at Station Y. Studies show that de-sensitizing the relay to the recorded transients may cause the relay to fail to operate as intended during power system oscillations.

Example R5h: As a result of an operation that left a portion of the power system in an electrical island condition, circuit XYZ within that island tripped, resulting in loss of load within the island. Subsequent investigation showed an overfrequency condition persisted after the formation of that island and the XYZ line protective relay operated. Since this relay was operating outside of its designed frequency range and would not be subject to this condition when line XYZ is operated normally connected to the BES, no corrective action will be taken because BES reliability would not be improved.

Example R5i: During a major ice storm, four of six circuits were lost at Station A. Subsequent to the loss of these circuits, a skywire (i.e., shield wire) broke near station A on line AB (between Station A and B) resulting in a phase-phase Fault. The protection scheme utilized for both protection groups is a permissive overreaching transfer trip (POTT). The Line AB protection at Station B tripped timed for this event (i.e., Slow Trip – During Fault) even though this line had been identified as requiring high speed clearing. A weak infeed condition was created at Station A due to the loss of 4 transmission circuits resulting in the absence of a permissive signal on Line AB from Station A during this Fault. No corrective action will be taken for this Misoperation as even under N-1 conditions, there is normally enough infeed at Station A to send a proper permissive signal to station B. Any changes to the protection scheme to account for this would not improve BES reliability.

A declaration why corrective actions are beyond the entity's control or would not improve BES reliability should include the Misoperation cause and the justification for taking no corrective action. Furthermore, a declaration that no further corrective actions will be taken is expected to be used sparingly.

Requirement R6

To achieve the stated purpose of this standard, which is to identify and correct the causes of Misoperations of Protection Systems for BES Elements, the responsible entity is required to implement a CAP that addresses the specific problem (i.e., cause(s) of the Misoperation)

through completion. Protection System owners are required in the implementation of a CAP to update it when actions or timetable change, until completed. Accomplishing this objective is intended to reduce the occurrence of future Misoperations of a similar nature, thereby improving reliability and minimizing risk to the BES.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip (See also, Example R5a).

Example R6a: Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.

CAP completed on 06/25/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for a relay Misoperation that was applying a standing trip that resulted in the correction and the establishment of a program for further replacements (See also, Example R5b).

Example R6b: Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.

A program for wholesale preemptive replacement of capacitors in this type of impedance relay was established on 10/28/2014.

CAP completed on 10/28/2014.

The following is an example of a completed CAP of corrective actions with a timetable that required updating for a failed relay and preemptive actions for similar installations (See also, Example R5c).

Example R6c: Actions: The impedance relay was removed from service on 06/02/2014 because it was applying a standing trip. A failed capacitor was found within the impedance relay and replaced. The impedance relay functioned properly during testing after the capacitor was replaced. The impedance relay was returned to service on 06/05/2014.

The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations A, B, and C on 08/16/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement was completed at stations D, E, and F on 10/24/2014. The impedance relay capacitor replacement for stations G, H, and I were postponed due to resource rescheduling from a scheduled 02/01/15 completion to 04/01/2015 completion. Capacitor replacement was completed on 03/09/2015 at stations G, H, and I. All stations identified in the evaluation have been completed.

CAP completed on 03/09/2015.

The following is an example of a completed CAP for corrective actions with updated actions for a firmware problem and preemptive actions for similar installations. (See also, Example R5d).

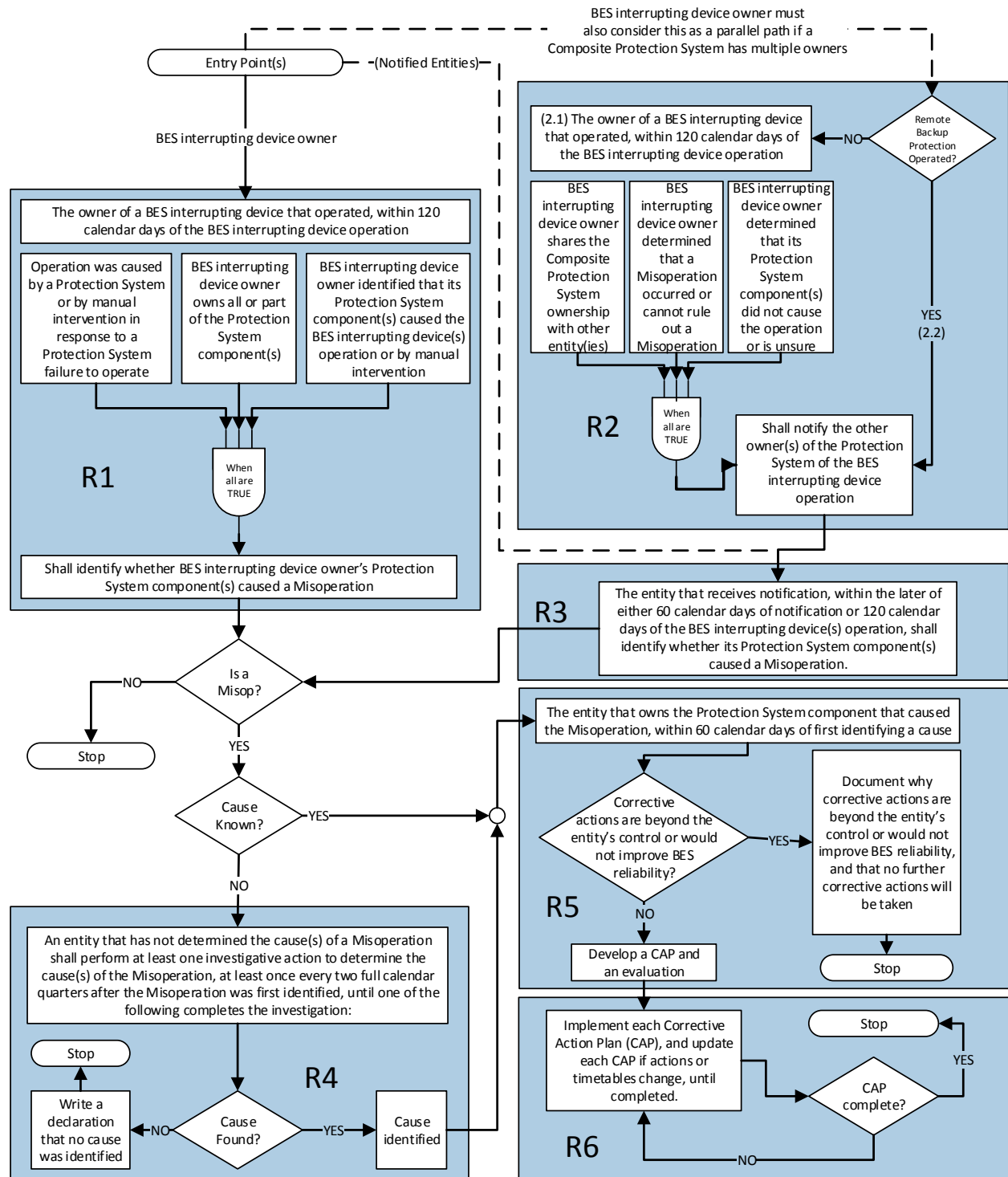
Example R6d: Actions: fault records were provided to the manufacturer on 06/04/2014. The manufacturer responded that the Misoperation was caused by a bug in version 2 firmware, and recommended installing version 3 firmware. Version 3 firmware was installed on 08/12/2014.

Nine of the twelve relays were updated to version 3 firmware on 09/23/2014. The manufacturer provided a subsequent update which was determined to be beneficial for the remaining relays. The remaining three of twelve relays identified as having the version 2 firmware were updated to version 3.01 firmware on 11/10/2014.

CAP completed on 11/10/2014.

The CAP is complete when all of the actions identified within the CAP have been completed.

Process Flow Chart: Below is a graphical representation demonstrating the relationships between Requirements:



Rationale

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Introduction

The only revisions made to version of PRC-004-4 are revisions to section 4.2 Facilities to clarify applicability of the Requirements of the standard at generator Facilities. These applicability revisions are intended to clarify and provide for consistent application of the Requirements to BES generator Facilities included in the BES through Inclusion I4 – Dispersed Power Producing Resources.

Rationale for Applicability

Misoperations occurring on the Protection Systems of individual generation resources identified under Inclusion I4 of the BES definition do not have a material impact on BES reliability when considered individually; however, the aggregate capability of these resources may impact BES reliability if a number of Protection Systems on the individual power producing resources incorrectly operated or failed to operate as designed during a system event. To recognize the potential for the Protection Systems of individual power producing resources to affect the reliability of the BES, 4.2.1.5 of the Facilities section reflects the threshold consistent with the revised BES definition. See FERC Order Approving Revised Definition, P 20, Docket No. RD14-2-000. The intent of 4.2.1.5 of the Facilities section is to exclude from the standard requirements these Protection Systems for “common- mode failure” type scenarios affecting less than or equal to 75 MVA aggregated nameplate generating capability at these dispersed generating facilities.

*** FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES ONLY ***

Enforcement Dates: Standard PRC-004-5(i) — Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction

United States

Standard	Requirement	Enforcement Date	Inactive Date
PRC-004-5(i)	All	04/02/2017	

Appendix PRC-004-5(i)-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-004-5(i) – Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.

4. **Applicability:**

- 4.1. **Functional Entities**

No specific provisions.

- 4.2. **Facilities**

Replace all references to Bulk Electric System (BES) with Main Transmission System (RTP), with the exception of 4.2.1.4, which is retired, and 4.2.1.5, which is replaced as follows:

4.2.1. [In the French-language context] Subsection 4.2.1.4 is retired given that *plan de defense* (Remedial Action Scheme) is replaced with *automatisme de réseau* to mean the same thing and already included in 4.2.1.3.

4.2.1.5 Protection Systems for individual generating units of Dispersed Power Producing Resources if the aggregate nameplate rating of those RTP Facilities affected by Misoperation does not exceed 75 MVA.

5. **Effective date:**

5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.3. Effective date of the standard and of this appendix in Québec: Month xx, 20xx

Implementation date for non-BPS RTP Facilities: 15 months after the effective date of the standard.

B. Requirements and Measures

Replace all references to Bulk Electric System (BES) with Main Transmission System (RTP).

C. Compliance

1. **Compliance Monitoring Process**

- 1.1. **Compliance Enforcement Authority**

In Québec, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means the Régie de l'énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

- 1.2. **Evidence Retention**

Appendix PRC-004-5(i)-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-004-5(i) – Protection System Misoperation Identification and Correction

No specific provisions.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

The Régie de l'énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

D. Table of Compliance Elements

Replace all references to Bulk Electric System (BES) with Main Transmission System (RTP).

E. Regional Variances

No specific provisions.

F. Interpretations

No specific provisions.

G. Associated Documents

No specific provisions.

Guidelines and Technical Basis

No specific provisions.

Rationale

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Maintenance
2. **Number:** PRC-005-6
3. **Purpose:** To document and implement programs for the maintenance of all Protection Systems, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying affecting the reliability of the Bulk Electric System (BES) so that they are kept in working order.
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. **Functional Entities:**
 - 4.1.1 Transmission Owner
 - 4.1.2 Generator Owner
 - 4.1.3 Distribution Provider
 - 4.2. **Facilities:**
 - 4.2.1 Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying that are installed for the purpose of detecting Faults on BES Elements (lines, buses, transformers, etc.)
 - 4.2.2 Protection Systems used for underfrequency load-shedding systems installed per ERO underfrequency load-shedding requirements.
 - 4.2.3 Protection Systems used for undervoltage load-shedding systems installed to prevent system voltage collapse or voltage instability for BES reliability.
 - 4.2.4 Protection Systems installed as a Remedial Action Scheme (RAS) for BES reliability.
 - 4.2.5 Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying for generator Facilities that are part of the BES, except for generators identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition, including:
 - 4.2.5.1 Protection Systems that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or auxiliary tripping relays.
 - 4.2.5.2 Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying for generator step-up transformers for generators that are part of the BES.
 - 4.2.5.3 Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying for station service or excitation transformers connected to the generator bus of generators which are part of the BES, that act to trip the generator either directly or via lockout or tripping auxiliary relays.

4.2.6 Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying for the following BES generator Facilities for dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the BES definition:

4.2.6.1 Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying for Facilities used in aggregating dispersed BES generation from the point where those resources aggregate to greater than 75 MVA to a common point of connection at 100kV or above.

4.2.7 Automatic Reclosing¹, including:

4.2.7.1 Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of Elements connected to the BES bus located at generating plant substations where the total installed gross generating plant capacity is greater than the gross capacity of the largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area or, if a member of a Reserve Sharing Group, the largest generating unit within the Reserve Sharing Group.²

4.2.7.2 Automatic Reclosing applied on the terminals of all BES Elements at substations one bus away from generating plants specified in Section 4.2.7.1 when the substation is less than 10 circuit-miles from the generating plant substation.

4.2.7.3 Automatic Reclosing applied as an integral part of an RAS specified in Section 4.2.4.

5. Effective Date: See the Implementation Plan for this standard.

6. Definitions Used in this Standard:

Automatic Reclosing – Includes the following Components:

- Reclosing relay
- Supervisory relay(s) or function(s) – relay(s) or function(s) that perform voltage and/or sync check functions that enable or disable operation of the reclosing relay
- Voltage sensing devices associated with the supervisory relay(s) or function(s)

¹ Automatic Reclosing addressed in Section 4.2.7.1 and 4.2.7.2 may be excluded if the equipment owner can demonstrate that a close-in three-phase fault present for twice the normal clearing time (capturing a minimum trip-close-trip time delay) does not result in a total loss of gross generation in the Interconnection exceeding the gross capacity of the largest relevant BES generating unit where the Automatic Reclosing is applied.

² The largest BES generating unit within the Balancing Authority Area or the largest generating unit within the Reserve Sharing Group, as applicable, is subject to change. As a result of such a change, the Automatic Reclosing Components subject to the standard could change effective on the date of such change.

- Control circuitry associated with the reclosing relay or supervisory relay(s) or function(s)

Sudden Pressure Relaying – A system that trips an interrupting device(s) to isolate the equipment it is monitoring and includes the following Components:

- Fault pressure relay – a mechanical relay or device that detects rapid changes in gas pressure, oil pressure, or oil flow that are indicative of Faults within liquid-filled, wire-wound equipment
- Control circuitry associated with a fault pressure relay

Unresolved Maintenance Issue – A deficiency identified during a maintenance activity that causes the Component to not meet the intended performance, cannot be corrected during the maintenance interval, and requires follow-up corrective action.

Segment – Components of a consistent design standard, or a particular model or type from a single manufacturer that typically share other common elements. Consistent performance is expected across the entire population of a Segment. A Segment must contain at least sixty (60) individual Components.

Component Type –

- Any one of the five specific elements of a Protection System
- Any one of the four specific elements of Automatic Reclosing
- Any one of the two specific elements of Sudden Pressure Relaying

Component – Any individual discrete piece of equipment included in a Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, or Sudden Pressure Relaying.

Countable Event – A failure of a Component requiring repair or replacement, any condition discovered during the maintenance activities in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5, which requires corrective action or a Protection System Misoperation attributed to hardware failure or calibration failure. Misoperations due to product design errors, software errors, relay settings different from specified settings, Protection System Component, Automatic Reclosing, or Sudden Pressure Relaying configuration or application errors are not included in Countable Events.

B. Requirements and Measures

- R1.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall establish a Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP) for its Protection Systems, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying identified in Section 4.2, Facilities. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

The PSMP shall:

- 1.1.** Identify which maintenance method (time-based, performance-based per PRC-005 Attachment A, or a combination) is used to address each Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Component Type. All batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Type of a Protection System shall be included in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3.
 - 1.2.** Include the applicable monitored Component attributes applied to each Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, Table 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Components.
- M1.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner and Distribution Provider shall have a documented PSMP in accordance with Requirement R1.
- For each Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Component Type, the documentation shall include the type of maintenance method applied (time-based, performance-based, or a combination of these maintenance methods), and shall include all batteries associated with the station dc supply Component Types in a time-based program as described in Table 1-4 and Table 3. (Part 1.1)
- For Component Types that use monitoring to extend the maintenance intervals, the responsible entity(s) shall have evidence for each Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Component Type (such as manufacturer's specifications or engineering drawings) of the appropriate monitored Component attributes as specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, Table 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5. (Part 1.2)
- R2.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP shall follow the procedure established in PRC-005 Attachment A to establish and maintain its performance-based intervals. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*
- M2.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses performance-based maintenance intervals shall have evidence that its current performance-based maintenance program(s) is in accordance with Requirement R2, which may include, but is not limited to, Component lists, dated maintenance records, and dated analysis records and results.
- R3.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall maintain its Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Components that are included within the

time-based maintenance program in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, Table 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5. *[Violation Risk Factor: High]*
[Time Horizon: Operations Planning]

- M3.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes time-based maintenance program(s) shall have evidence that it has maintained its Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Components included within its time-based program in accordance with Requirement R3. The evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.
- R4.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance program(s) in accordance with Requirement R2 shall implement and follow its PSMP for its Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Components that are included within the performance-based program(s). *[Violation Risk Factor: High]* *[Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*
- M4.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that utilizes performance-based maintenance intervals in accordance with Requirement R2 shall have evidence that it has implemented the PSMP for the Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Components included in its performance-based program in accordance with Requirement R4. The evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated maintenance records, dated maintenance summaries, dated check-off lists, dated inspection records, or dated work orders.
- R5.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall demonstrate efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium]* *[Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*
- M5.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have evidence that it has undertaken efforts to correct identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues in accordance with Requirement R5. The evidence may include, but is not limited to, work orders, replacement Component orders, invoices, project schedules with completed milestones, return material authorizations (RMAs) or purchase orders.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

For Requirement R1, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep its current dated PSMP, as well as any superseded versions since the preceding compliance audit, including the documentation that specifies the type of maintenance program applied for each Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, or Sudden Pressure Relaying Component Type.

For Requirement R2, Requirement R3, and Requirement R4, in cases where the interval of the maintenance activity is longer than the audit cycle, the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep documentation of the most recent performance of that maintenance activity for the Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, or Sudden Pressure Relaying Component. In cases where the interval of the maintenance activity is shorter than the audit cycle, documentation of all performances (in accordance with the tables) of that maintenance activity for the Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, or Sudden Pressure Relaying Component since the previous scheduled audit date shall be retained.

For Requirement R5 the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each keep documentation of Unresolved Maintenance Issues identified by the entity since the last audit, including all that were resolved since the last audit.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes:

Compliance Audits

Self-Certifications

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigations

Self-Reporting

Complaints

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None

Table of Compliance Elements

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The entity's PSMP failed to specify whether one Component Type is being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both (Part 1.1).	The entity's PSMP failed to specify whether two Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both (Part 1.1).	<p>The entity's PSMP failed to specify whether three Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both. (Part 1.1).</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The entity's PSMP failed to include the applicable monitoring attributes applied to each Component Type consistent with the maintenance intervals specified in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5 where monitoring is used to extend the maintenance intervals beyond those specified for unmonitored Components (Part 1.2).</p>	<p>The entity failed to establish a PSMP.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The entity's PSMP failed to specify whether four or more Component Types are being addressed by time-based or performance-based maintenance, or a combination of both (Part 1.1).</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The entity's PSMP failed to include applicable station batteries in a time-based program (Part 1.1).</p>
R2	The entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within three years.	NA	The entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within four years.	<p>The entity uses performance-based maintenance intervals in its PSMP but:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Failed to establish the technical justification described within Requirement R2 for the initial use of the performance-based PSMP <p>OR</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2) Failed to reduce Countable Events to no more than 4% within five years <p>OR</p>

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
				3) Maintained a Segment with less than 60 Components OR 4) Failed to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Annually update the list of Components, OR • Annually perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the Segment population or 3 Components, OR • Annually analyze the program activities and results for each Segment.
R3	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the total Components included within a specific Component Type in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5.	For Components included within a time-based maintenance program, the entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the total Components included within a specific Component Type in accordance with the minimum maintenance activities and maximum maintenance intervals prescribed within Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 2, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5.

Requirement Number	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the entity failed to maintain 5% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the entity failed to maintain more than 5% but 10% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the entity failed to maintain more than 10% but 15% or less of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.	For Components included within a performance-based maintenance program, the entity failed to maintain more than 15% of the annual scheduled maintenance for a specific Component Type in accordance with their performance-based PSMP.
R5	The entity failed to undertake efforts to correct 5 or fewer identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 5 but less than or equal to 10 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 10 but less than or equal to 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.	The entity failed to undertake efforts to correct greater than 15 identified Unresolved Maintenance Issues.

D. Regional Variances

None.

E. Interpretations

None.

Supplemental Reference Documents

The following documents present a detailed discussion about determination of maintenance intervals and other useful information regarding establishment of a maintenance program.

1. *Supplementary Reference and FAQ - PRC-005-6 Protection System Maintenance*, Protection System Maintenance and Testing Standard Drafting Team (July 2015)
2. *Considerations for Maintenance and Testing of Auto-reclosing Schemes*, NERC System Analysis and Modeling Subcommittee, and NERC System Protection and Control Subcommittee (November 2012)
3. *Sudden Pressure Relays and Other Devices that Respond to Non-Electrical Quantities – SPCS Input for Standard Development in Response to FERC Order No. 758*, NERC System Protection and Control Subcommittee (December 2013)
4. *Sudden Pressure Relays and Other Devices that Respond to Non-Electrical Quantities – Supplemental Information to Support Project 2007-17.3: Protection System Maintenance and Testing* (October 31, 2014)

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	February 8, 2005	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	New
1	February 7, 2006	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Changed incorrect use of certain hyphens (-) to “en dash” (–) and “em dash (—).” 2. Added “periods” to items where appropriate. Changed “Timeframe” to “Time Frame” in item D, 1.2.
1	March 16, 2007	PRC-005-1 Approved by FERC. Docket No. RM06-16-000	

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1a	February 17, 2011	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Added Appendix 1 - Interpretation regarding applicability of standard to protection of radially connected transformers developed in Project 2009-17
1a	September 26, 2011	Approved by FERC. Docket No. RD11-5-000	
1b	November 5, 2009	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Interpretation of R1, R1.1, and R1.2 developed by Project 2009-10
1b	February 3, 2012	FERC Order approving revised definition of “Protection System”	Per footnote 8 of FERC’s order, the definition of “Protection System” supersedes interpretation “b” of PRC-005-1b upon the effective date of the modified definition (i.e., April 1, 2013) <i>See N. Amer. Elec. Reliability Corp., 138 FERC ¶ 61,095 (February 3, 2012).</i>
1b	February 3, 2012	PRC-005-1b Approved by FERC. Docket No. RM10-5-000	
1.1b	May 9, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Errata change developed by Project 2010-07, clarified inclusion of generator interconnection Facility in Generator Owner’s responsibility
1.1b	September 19, 2013	PRC-005-1.1b Approved by FERC. Docket No. RM12-16-000	
2	November 7, 2012	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Project 2007-17 - Complete revision, absorbing maintenance requirements from PRC-005-1.1b, PRC-008-0, PRC-011-0, PRC-017-0

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
2	October 17, 2013	Approved by NERC Standards Committee	Errata Change: The Standards Committee approved an errata change to the implementation plan for PRC-005-2 to add the phrase “or as otherwise made effective pursuant to the laws applicable to such ERO governmental authorities;” to the second sentence under the “Retirement of Existing Standards” section. (no change to standard version number)
2	December 19, 2013	PRC-005-2 Approved by FERC. Docket No. RM13-7-000	
2	March 7, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Modified R1 VSL in response to FERC directive (no change to standard version number)
2(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2(i)	May 29, 2015	PRC-005-2(i) Approved by FERC. Docket No. RD15-3-000	
2(ii)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
3	November 7, 2013	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Revised to address the FERC directive in Order No. 758 to include Automatic Reclosing in maintenance programs

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
3	February 12, 2014	Approved by NERC Standards Committee	Errata Change: The Standards Committee approved errata changes to correct capitalization of certain defined terms within the definitions of “Unresolved Maintenance Issue” and “Protection System Maintenance Program”. The changes will be reflected in the definitions section of PRC-005-3 for “Unresolved Maintenance Issue” and in the NERC Glossary of Terms for “Protection System Maintenance Program”. (no change to standard version number)
3	March 7, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Modified R1 VSL in response to FERC directive (no change to standard version number)
3	January 22, 2015	PRC-005-3 Approved by FERC. Docket No. RM14-8-000	
3(i)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
3(i)	May 29, 2015	PRC-005-3(i) Approved by FERC. Docket No. RD15-3-000	
3(ii)	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
4	November 13, 2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Added Sudden Pressure Relaying in response to FERC Order No. 758
4	Sept 17, 2015	PRC-005-4 Approved by FERC. Docket No. RM15-9-000	

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
5	May 7, 2015	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Applicability section revised by Project 2014-01 to clarify application of Requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources.
6	November 5, 2015	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Revised to add supervisory relays, the voltage sensing devices, and the associated control circuitry to Automatic Reclosing in accordance with the directives in FERC Order 803.
6	December 18, 2015	FERC Letter Order approving PRC-005-6. Docket No. RD16-2-000.	

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval ³	Maintenance Activities
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 Calendar Years	For all unmonitored relays: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify that settings are as specified For non-microprocessor relays: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Test and, if necessary calibrate For microprocessor relays: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Internal self-diagnosis and alarming (see Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. • Alarming for power supply failure (see Table 2). 	12 Calendar Years	Verify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values.

³ For the tables in this standard, a calendar year starts on the first day of a new year (January 1) after a maintenance activity has been completed. For the tables in this standard, a calendar month starts on the first day of the first month after a maintenance activity has been completed.

Table 1-1 Component Type - Protective Relay Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval ³	Maintenance Activities
Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). • Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2). 	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.

Table 1-2 Component Type - Communications Systems Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Any unmonitored communications system necessary for correct operation of protective functions, and not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	4 Calendar Months	Verify that the communications system is functional.
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the presence of the channel function, and alarming for loss of function (See Table 2).	12 Calendar Years	Verify that the communications system meets performance criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate). Verify operation of communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.
Any communications system with all of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous monitoring or periodic automated testing for the performance of the channel using criteria pertinent to the communications technology applied (e.g. signal level, reflected power, or data error rate, and alarming for excessive performance degradation). (See Table 2) • Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). 	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored communications system inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System

Table 1-3 Component Type - Voltage and Current Sensing Devices Providing Inputs to Protective Relays Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Any voltage and current sensing devices not having monitoring attributes of the category below.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that current and voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Voltage and Current Sensing devices connected to microprocessor relays with ac measurements that are continuously verified by comparison of sensing input value, as measured by the microprocessor relay, to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for unacceptable error or failure (see Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 1-4(a) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for RAS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Protection System Station dc supply using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) batteries not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cell condition of all individual battery cells where cells are visible – or measure battery cell/unit internal ohmic values where the cells are not visible • Physical condition of battery rack

<p style="text-align: center;">Table 1-4(a) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for RAS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).</p>		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
	<p>18 Calendar Months</p> <p style="text-align: center;">-or-</p> <p>6 Calendar Years</p>	<p>Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">-or-</p> <p>Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.</p>

Table 1-4(b) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for RAS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Protection System Station dc supply with Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) batteries not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For unintentional grounds
	6 Calendar Months	Inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values.
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Physical condition of battery rack

<p style="text-align: center;">Table 1-4(b) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for RAS, non-distributed UFLS systems, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).</p>		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
	6 Calendar Months -or- 3 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by evaluating cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance (e.g. internal ohmic values or float current) against the station battery baseline. -or- Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

Table 1-4(c) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for RAS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Protection System Station dc supply Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) batteries not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Electrolyte level • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Verify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Float voltage of battery charger • Battery continuity • Battery terminal connection resistance • Battery intercell or unit-to-unit connection resistance Inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cell condition of all individual battery cells. • Physical condition of battery rack

Table 1-4(c) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Nickel-Cadmium (NiCad) Batteries Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)		
Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for RAS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the station battery can perform as manufactured by conducting a performance or modified performance capacity test of the entire battery bank.

<p style="text-align: center;">Table 1-4(d) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply Using Non Battery Based Energy Storage Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Protection System Station dc supply used only for non-BES interrupting devices for RAS, non-distributed UFLS system, or non-distributed UVLS systems is excluded (see Table 1-4(e)).</p>		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Any Protection System station dc supply not using a battery and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	4 Calendar Months	Verify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Station dc supply voltage Inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For unintentional grounds
	18 Calendar Months	Inspect: Condition of non-battery based dc supply
	6 Calendar Years	Verify that the dc supply can perform as manufactured when ac power is not present.

Table 1-4(e) Component Type – Protection System Station dc Supply for non-BES Interrupting Devices for RAS, non-distributed UFLS, and non-distributed UVLS systems		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Any Protection System dc supply used for tripping only non-BES interrupting devices as part of a RAS, non-distributed UFLS, or non-distributed UVLS system and not having monitoring attributes of Table 1-4(f).	When control circuits are verified (See Table 1-5)	Verify Station dc supply voltage.

Table 1-4(f) Exclusions for Protection System Station dc Supply Monitoring Devices and Systems		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Any station dc supply with high and low voltage monitoring and alarming of the battery charger voltage to detect charger overvoltage and charger failure (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	No periodic verification of station dc supply voltage is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with electrolyte level monitoring and alarming in every cell (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the electrolyte level for each cell is required.
Any station dc supply with unintentional dc ground monitoring and alarming (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of unintentional dc grounds is required.
Any station dc supply with charger float voltage monitoring and alarming to ensure correct float voltage is being applied on the station dc supply (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of float voltage of battery charger is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of battery string continuity (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the battery continuity is required.
Any battery based station dc supply with monitoring and alarming of the intercell and/or terminal connection detail resistance of the entire battery (See Table 2).		No periodic verification of the intercell and terminal connection resistance is required.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with internal ohmic value or float current monitoring and alarming, and evaluating present values relative to baseline internal ohmic values for every cell/unit (See Table 2).		No periodic evaluation relative to baseline of battery cell/unit measurements indicative of battery performance is required to verify the station battery can perform as manufactured.
Any Valve Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) station battery with monitoring and alarming of each cell/unit internal ohmic value (See Table 2).		No periodic inspection of the condition of all individual units by measuring battery cell/unit internal ohmic values of a station VRLA or Vented Lead-Acid (VLA) battery is required.

Table 1-5 Component Type - Control Circuitry Associated With Protective Functions Excluding distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS (see Table 3), Automatic Reclosing (see Table 4), and Sudden Pressure Relaying (see Table 5) Note: Table requirements apply to all Control Circuitry Components of Protection Systems, and RAS except as noted.		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Trip coils or actuators of circuit breakers, interrupting devices, or mitigating devices (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify that each trip coil is able to operate the circuit breaker, interrupting device, or mitigating device.
Electromechanical lockout devices which are directly in a trip path from the protective relay to the interrupting device trip coil (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout devices.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with RAS. (See Table 4-2(b) for RAS which include Automatic Reclosing.)	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the control circuits essential for proper operation of the RAS.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with protective functions inclusive of all auxiliary relays.	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the trip circuits inclusive of all auxiliary relays through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.
Control circuitry associated with protective functions and/or RAS whose integrity is monitored and alarmed (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

<p align="center">Table 2 – Alarming Paths and Monitoring</p> <p align="center">In Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5 alarm attributes used to justify extended maximum maintenance intervals and/or reduced maintenance activities are subject to the following maintenance requirements</p>		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
<p>Any alarm path through which alarms in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5 are conveyed from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated, and not having all the attributes of the “Alarm Path with monitoring” category below.</p> <p>Alarms are reported within 24 hours of detection to a location where corrective action can be initiated.</p>	12 Calendar Years	Verify that the alarm path conveys alarm signals to a location where corrective action can be initiated.
<p>Alarm Path with monitoring:</p> <p>The location where corrective action is taken receives an alarm within 24 hours for failure of any portion of the alarming path from the alarm origin to the location where corrective action can be initiated.</p>	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Any unmonitored protective relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.	6 Calendar Years	<p>Verify that settings are as specified.</p> <p>For non-microprocessor relays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Test and, if necessary calibrate. <p>For microprocessor relays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
<p>Monitored microprocessor protective relay with the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Internal self-diagnosis and alarming (See Table 2). • Voltage and/or current waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. <p>Alarming for power supply failure (See Table 2).</p>	12 Calendar Years	<p>Verify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System. • Acceptable measurement of power system input values.
<p>Monitored microprocessor protective relay with preceding row attributes and the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AC measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). 	12 Calendar Years	<p>Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Protection System.</p>

Table 3 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for distributed UFLS and distributed UVLS Systems		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2).		
Voltage and/or current sensing devices associated with UFLS or UVLS systems.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that current and/or voltage signal values are provided to the protective relays.
Protection System dc supply for tripping non-BES interrupting devices used only for a UFLS or UVLS system.	12 Calendar Years	Verify Protection System dc supply voltage.
Control circuitry between the UFLS or UVLS relays and electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 Calendar Years	Verify the path from the relay to the lockout and/or tripping auxiliary relay (including essential supervisory logic).
Electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices associated only with UFLS or UVLS systems (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	12 Calendar Years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices.
Control circuitry between the electromechanical lockout and/or tripping auxiliary devices and the non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems, or between UFLS or UVLS relays (with no interposing electromechanical lockout or auxiliary device) and the non-BES interrupting devices (excludes non-BES interrupting device trip coils).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.
Trip coils of non-BES interrupting devices in UFLS or UVLS systems.	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

<p align="center">Table 4-1</p> <p align="center">Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components</p> <p align="center">Component Type – Reclosing and Supervisory Relay</p> <p>Note: In cases where Components of Automatic Reclosing are common to Components listed in Table 1-1 through 1-5, the Components only need to be tested once during a distinct maintenance interval.</p>		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
<p>Any unmonitored reclosing relay or supervisory relay not having all the monitoring attributes of a category below.</p>	<p>6 Calendar Years</p>	<p>Verify that settings are as specified.</p> <p>For non-microprocessor reclosing or supervisory relays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Test and, if necessary calibrate <p>For microprocessor reclosing or supervisory relays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Automatic Reclosing. <p>For microprocessor supervisory relays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Monitored microprocessor reclosing relay or supervisory relay with the following: Internal self-diagnosis and alarming (See Table 2). • Alarming for power supply failure (See Table 2). <p>For supervisory relay:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voltage waveform sampling three or more times per power cycle, and conversion of samples to numeric values for measurement calculations by microprocessor electronics. 	<p>12 Calendar Years</p>	<p>Verify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings are as specified. • Operation of the relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Automatic Reclosing. <p>For supervisory relays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify acceptable measurement of power system input values.

Table 4-1 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components Component Type – Reclosing and Supervisory Relay		
Note: In cases where Components of Automatic Reclosing are common to Components listed in Table 1-1 through 1-5, the Components only need to be tested once during a distinct maintenance interval.		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Monitored microprocessor reclosing relay or supervisory relay with preceding row attributes and the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some or all binary or status inputs and control outputs are monitored by a process that continuously demonstrates ability to perform as designed, with alarming for failure (See Table 2). Alarming for change of settings (See Table 2). For supervisory relay: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ac measurements are continuously verified by comparison to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for excessive error (See Table 2). 	12 Calendar Years	Verify only the unmonitored relay inputs and outputs that are essential to proper functioning of the Automatic Reclosing.

Table 4-2(a)

Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components

Component Type – Control Circuitry Associated with Reclosing and Supervisory Relays that are NOT an Integral Part of an RAS

Note: In cases where Components of Automatic Reclosing are common to Components listed in Table 1-5, the Components only need to be tested once during a distinct maintenance interval.

Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Unmonitored Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is not an integral part of an RAS.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that Automatic Reclosing, upon initiation, does not issue a premature closing command to the close circuitry.
Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is not part of an RAS and is monitored and alarmed for conditions that would result in a premature closing command. (See Table 2)	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

Table 4-2(b)

Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components

Component Type – Control Circuitry Associated with Reclosing and Supervisory Relays that ARE an Integral Part of an RAS

Note: In cases where Components of Automatic Reclosing are common to Components listed in Table 1-5, the Components only need to be tested once during a distinct maintenance interval.

Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Close coils or actuators of circuit breakers or similar devices that are used in conjunction with Automatic Reclosing as part of an RAS (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify that each close coil or actuator is able to operate the circuit breaker or mitigating device.
Unmonitored close control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing used as an integral part of an RAS.	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the control circuits associated with Automatic Reclosing that are essential for proper operation of the RAS.
Control circuitry associated with Automatic Reclosing that is an integral part of an RAS whose integrity is monitored and alarmed. (See Table 2)	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

<p align="center">Table 4-3</p> <p align="center">Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Automatic Reclosing Components</p> <p align="center">Component Type – Voltage Sensing Devices Associated with Supervisory Relays</p> <p align="center">Note: In cases where Components of Automatic Reclosing are common to Components listed in Table 1-3, the Components only need to be tested once during a distinct maintenance interval.</p>		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Any voltage sensing devices not having monitoring attributes of the category below.	12 Calendar Years	Verify that voltage signal values are provided to the supervisory relays.
Voltage sensing devices that are connected to microprocessor supervisory relays with ac measurements that are continuously verified by comparison of sensing input value, as measured by the microprocessor relay, to an independent ac measurement source, with alarming for unacceptable error or failure. (See Table 2)	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

<p style="text-align: center;">Table 5 Maintenance Activities and Intervals for Sudden Pressure Relaying</p>		
<p style="text-align: center;">Note: In cases where Components of Sudden Pressure Relaying are common to Components listed in Table 1-5, the Components only need to be tested once during a distinct maintenance interval.</p>		
Component Attributes	Maximum Maintenance Interval	Maintenance Activities
Any fault pressure relay.	6 Calendar Years	Verify the pressure or flow sensing mechanism is operable.
Electromechanical lockout devices which are directly in a trip path from the fault pressure relay to the interrupting device trip coil (regardless of any monitoring of the control circuitry).	6 Calendar Years	Verify electrical operation of electromechanical lockout devices.
Unmonitored control circuitry associated with Sudden Pressure Relaying.	12 Calendar Years	Verify all paths of the trip circuits inclusive of all auxiliary relays through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.
Control circuitry associated with Sudden Pressure Relaying whose integrity is monitored and alarmed (See Table 2).	No periodic maintenance specified	None.

PRC-005 — Attachment A

Criteria for a Performance-Based Protection System Maintenance Program

Purpose: To establish a technical basis for initial and continued use of a performance-based Protection System Maintenance Program (PSMP).

To establish the technical justification for the initial use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. Develop a list with a description of Components included in each designated Segment, with a minimum Segment population of 60 Components.
2. Maintain the Components in each Segment according to the time-based maximum allowable intervals established in Tables 1-1 through 1-5, Table 3, Tables 4-1 through 4-3, and Table 5 until results of maintenance activities for the Segment are available for a minimum of 30 individual Components of the Segment.
3. Document the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment, including maintenance dates and Countable Events for each included Component.
4. Analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment and develop maintenance intervals.
5. Determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences Countable Events on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.

To maintain the technical justification for the ongoing use of a performance-based PSMP:

1. At least annually, update the list of Components and Segments and/or description if any changes occur within the Segment.
2. Perform maintenance on the greater of 5% of the Components (addressed in the performance based PSMP) in each Segment or 3 individual Components within the Segment in each year.
3. For the prior year, analyze the maintenance program activities and results for each Segment to determine the overall performance of the Segment.
4. Using the prior year's data, determine the maximum allowable maintenance interval for each Segment such that the Segment experiences Countable Events on no more than 4% of the Components within the Segment, for the greater of either the last 30 Components maintained or all Components maintained in the previous year.

If the Components in a Segment maintained through a performance-based PSMP experience 4% or more Countable Events, develop, document, and implement an action plan to reduce the Countable Events to less than 4% of the Segment population within 3 years.

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for revisions to Automatic Reclosing:

To address directives from FERC Order No. 803 addressing Automatic Reclosing, the definition for Automatic Reclosing was revised to add supervisory relays, the associated voltage sensing devices, and the associated control circuitry.

Rationale for revisions to Component Type:

With the revision of the definition of Automatic Reclosing, there are four specific elements of this definition, rather than two as stated in the prior version.

Appendix PRC-005-6-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-005-6 – Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Maintenance

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.

2. **Number:** No specific provisions.

3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.

4. **Applicability:**

4.1. **Functional Entities**

No specific provisions.

4.2. **Facilities**

Replace all references to “Bulk Electric System (BES)” with “Main Transmission System (RTP)”, including the footnotes 1 and 2.

The subsections of Section 4.2 apply, with the exception of the following subsections, which take precedence:

4.2.2. Protection Systems for underfrequency load shedding (UFLS) systems.

4.2.5. Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying for generator Facilities that are part of the RTP, except for Dispersed Power Producing Resources, including the following:

4.2.6. Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying for the following RTP generation Facilities in the case of Dispersed Power Producing Resources:

4.2.6.1 Protection Systems and Sudden Pressure Relaying for Facilities mentioned in point b) of the Dispersed Power Producing Resources definition in the Glossary of Terms Used in NERC Reliability Standards (the “Glossary”).

5. **Effective date:**

5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.3. Effective date of the standard and of this appendix in Québec: Month xx, 20xx

BPS Protection Systems that were already covered by PRC-005-2: the implementations dates for the Requirements are those of PRC-005-2 (see tables 1a and 1b of this Appendix).

RTP Protection Systems that were not included in PRC-005-2: the implementation dates for the Requirements are specified in tables 2a and 2b of this Appendix. These tables consider not only the equipment that is now covered because it is part of the RTP (including the BPS), but also all Elements newly covered by PRC-005-6, i.e., Automatic Reclosing, Sudden Pressure

Appendix PRC-005-6-QC-1

**Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard
PRC-005-6 – Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying
Maintenance**

Relaying, Protection Systems installed as Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) and not corresponding to the definition of SPS, and the Protection Systems of Dispersed Power Producing Resources.

Table 1a – Implementation dates of PRC-005-2, applicable only to BPS

Requirements	Implementation dates in Québec
R1, R2, R5	January 1, 2017
R3, R4	See table below

Table 1b – Implementation dates of PRC-005-2 for requirements R3 and R4

Maximum Maintenance Interval (tables 1 to 3)	Applicability	Implementation dates in Québec
≤1 year	100% maintenance required	January 1, 2017
1 year to 2 years	100% maintenance required	April 1, 2017
Up to 3 years	30% maintenance required	April 1, 2017
	60% maintenance required	April 1, 2017
	100% maintenance required	April 1, 2018
Up to 6 years	30% maintenance required	April 1, 2017
	60% maintenance required	April 1, 2019
	100% maintenance required	April 1, 2021
Up to 12 years	30% maintenance required	April 1, 2019
	60% maintenance required	April 1, 2023
	100% maintenance required	April 1, 2027

**Table 2a – Implementation dates for PRC-005-6, applicable to the RTP and now covering
Automatic Reclosing, Sudden Pressure Relaying, Protection Systems installed as Remedial
Action Schemes (RAS), but not included in the definition of SPS, and Protection Systems
for Dispersed Power Producing Resources**

Requirements	Implementation dates in Québec
R1, R2 and R5	12 months after the effective date of the standard
R3 and R4	see table below

Appendix PRC-005-6-QC-1

**Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard
PRC-005-6 – Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying
Maintenance**

Table 2b – Implementation dates of PRC-005-6 for requirements R3 and R4

Maximum Maintenance Interval (tables 1 to 5)	Applicability	Implementation dates in Québec
≤1 year	100% maintenance required	24 months after the effective date of the standard
1 year to 2 years	100% maintenance required	27 months after the effective date of the standard
Up to 3 years	30% maintenance required	27 months after the effective date of the standard
	60% maintenance required	39 months after the effective date of the standard
	100% maintenance required	52 months after the effective date of the standard
Up to 6 years	30% maintenance required	36 months after the effective date of the standard
	60% maintenance required	48 months after the effective date of the standard
	100% maintenance required	72 months after the effective date of the standard
Up to 12 years	30% maintenance required	60 months after the effective date of the standard
	60% maintenance required	90 months after the effective date of the standard
	100% maintenance required	144 months after the effective date of the standard

6. Definitions Used in this Standard

No specific provisions.

B. Requirements and Measures

No specific provisions.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

Appendix PRC-005-6-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-005-6 – Protection System, Automatic Reclosing, and Sudden Pressure Relaying Maintenance

In Québec, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means the Régie de l’énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

1.2. Evidence Retention

No specific provisions.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

The Régie de l’énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

Table of Compliance Elements

No specific provisions.

D. Regional Variances

No specific provisions.

E. Interpretations

No specific provisions.

Supplemental Reference Documents

No specific provisions.

Tables 1-1 to 1-5

Replace all references to the term “non-BES” with the term “non-RTP.”

Table 2

No specific provisions.

Table 3

Replace all references to the term “non-BES” with the term “non-RTP.”

Tables 4-1 to 5

No specific provisions.

Attachment A

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Remedial Action Schemes
2. **Number:** PRC-012-2
3. **Purpose:** To ensure that Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) do not introduce unintentional or unacceptable reliability risks to the Bulk Electric System (BES).
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. **Functional Entities:**
 - 4.1.1. Reliability Coordinator
 - 4.1.2. Planning Coordinator
 - 4.1.3. RAS-entity – the Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider that owns all or part of a RAS
 - 4.2. **Facilities:**
 - 4.2.1. Remedial Action Schemes (RAS)
5. **Effective Date:** See the Implementation Plan for PRC-012-2.

B. Requirements and Measures

- R1.** Prior to placing a new or functionally modified RAS in service or retiring an existing RAS, each RAS-entity shall provide the information identified in Attachment 1 for review to the Reliability Coordinator(s) where the RAS is located. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*
- M1.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, a copy of the Attachment 1 documentation and the dated communications with the reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) in accordance with Requirement R1.
- R2.** Each Reliability Coordinator that receives Attachment 1 information pursuant to Requirement R1 shall, within four full calendar months of receipt or on a mutually agreed upon schedule, perform a review of the RAS in accordance with Attachment 2, and provide written feedback to each RAS-entity. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*
- M2.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated reports, checklists, or other documentation detailing the RAS review, and the dated communications with the RAS-entity in accordance with Requirement R2.
- R3.** Prior to placing a new or functionally modified RAS in service or retiring an existing RAS, each RAS-entity that receives feedback from the reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) identifying reliability issue(s) shall resolve each issue to obtain approval of the RAS from each reviewing Reliability Coordinator. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*

- M3.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated documentation and communications with the reviewing Reliability Coordinator that no reliability issues were identified during the review or that all identified reliability issues were resolved in accordance with Requirement R3.
- R4.** Each Planning Coordinator, at least once every five full calendar years, shall:
[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]
- 4.1.** Perform an evaluation of each RAS within its planning area to determine whether:
- 4.1.1.** The RAS mitigates the System condition(s) or Contingency(ies) for which it was designed.
 - 4.1.2.** The RAS avoids adverse interactions with other RAS, and protection and control systems.
 - 4.1.3.** For limited impact¹ RAS, the inadvertent operation of the RAS or the failure of the RAS to operate does not cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations.
 - 4.1.4.** Except for limited impact RAS, the possible inadvertent operation of the RAS, resulting from any single RAS component malfunction satisfies all of the following:
 - 4.1.4.1.** The BES shall remain stable.
 - 4.1.4.2.** Cascading shall not occur.
 - 4.1.4.3.** Applicable Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded.
 - 4.1.4.4.** BES voltages shall be within post-Contingency voltage limits and post-Contingency voltage deviation limits as established by the Transmission Planner and the Planning Coordinator.
 - 4.1.4.5.** Transient voltage responses shall be within acceptable limits as established by the Transmission Planner and the Planning Coordinator.
 - 4.1.5.** Except for limited impact RAS, a single component failure in the RAS, when the RAS is intended to operate does not prevent the BES from meeting the same performance requirements (defined in Reliability Standard TPL-001-4 or its successor) as those required for the events and conditions for which the RAS is designed.

¹ A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations.

- 4.2.** Provide the results of the RAS evaluation including any identified deficiencies to each reviewing Reliability Coordinator and RAS-entity, and each impacted Transmission Planner and Planning Coordinator.
- M4.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated reports or other documentation of the analyses comprising the evaluation(s) of each RAS and dated communications with the RAS-entity(ies), Transmission Planner(s), Planning Coordinator(s), and the reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) in accordance with Requirement R4.
- R5.** Each RAS-entity, within 120 full calendar days of a RAS operation or a failure of its RAS to operate when expected, or on a mutually agreed upon schedule with its reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s), shall: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]*
- 5.1.** Participate in analyzing the RAS operational performance to determine whether:
- 5.1.1.** The System events and/or conditions appropriately triggered the RAS.
 - 5.1.2.** The RAS responded as designed.
 - 5.1.3.** The RAS was effective in mitigating BES performance issues it was designed to address.
 - 5.1.4.** The RAS operation resulted in any unintended or adverse BES response.
- 5.2.** Provide the results of RAS operational performance analysis that identified any deficiencies to its reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s).
- M5.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated documentation detailing the results of the RAS operational performance analysis and dated communications with participating RAS-entities and the reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) in accordance with Requirement R5.
- R6.** Each RAS-entity shall participate in developing a Corrective Action Plan (CAP) and submit the CAP to its reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) within six full calendar months of: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-term Planning]*
- Being notified of a deficiency in its RAS pursuant to Requirement R4, or
 - Notifying the Reliability Coordinator of a deficiency pursuant to Requirement R5, Part 5.2, or
 - Identifying a deficiency in its RAS pursuant to Requirement R8.
- M6.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, a dated CAP and dated communications among each reviewing Reliability Coordinator and each RAS-entity in accordance with Requirement R6.

- R7.** Each RAS-entity shall, for each of its CAPs developed pursuant to Requirement R6:
[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning, Long-term Planning]
- 7.1.** Implement the CAP.
- 7.2.** Update the CAP if actions or timetables change.
- 7.3.** Notify each reviewing Reliability Coordinator if CAP actions or timetables change and when the CAP is completed.
- M7.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated documentation such as CAPs, project or work management program records, settings sheets, work orders, maintenance records, and communication with the reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) that documents the implementation, updating, or completion of a CAP in accordance with Requirement R7.
- R8.** Each RAS-entity shall participate in performing a functional test of each of its RAS to verify the overall RAS performance and the proper operation of non-Protection System components: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*
- At least once every six full calendar years for all RAS not designated as limited impact, or
 - At least once every twelve full calendar years for all RAS designated as limited impact
- M8.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated documentation detailing the RAS operational performance analysis for a correct RAS segment or an end-to-end operation (Measure M5 documentation), or dated documentation demonstrating that a functional test of each RAS segment or an end-to-end test was performed in accordance with Requirement R8.
- R9.** Each Reliability Coordinator shall update a RAS database containing, at a minimum, the information in Attachment 3 at least once every twelve full calendar months.
[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]
- M9.** Acceptable evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated spreadsheets, database reports, or other documentation demonstrating a RAS database was updated in accordance with Requirement R9.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority:

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention:

The following evidence retention period(s) identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full-time period since the last audit.

The applicable entity shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

The RAS-entity (Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider) shall each keep data or evidence to show compliance with Requirements R1, R3, R5, R6, R7, and R8, and Measures M1, M3, M5, M6, M7, and M8 since the last audit, unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

The Reliability Coordinator shall each keep data or evidence to show compliance with Requirements R2 and R9, and Measures M2 and M9 since the last audit, unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

The Planning Coordinator shall each keep data or evidence to show compliance with Requirement R4 and Measure M4 since the last audit, unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation.

If a RAS-entity (Transmission Owner, Generator Owner or Distribution Provider), Reliability Coordinator, or Planning Coordinator is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is completed and approved, or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Program

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Program” refers to the identification of the processes that will be used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of assessing performance or outcomes with the associated Reliability Standard.

Violation Severity Levels

R #	Violation Severity Levels			
	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1.	N/A	N/A	N/A	The RAS-entity failed to provide the information identified in Attachment 1 to each Reliability Coordinator prior to placing a new or functionally modified RAS in service or retiring an existing RAS in accordance with Requirement R1.
R2.	The reviewing Reliability Coordinator performed the review and provided the written feedback in accordance with Requirement R2, but was late by less than or equal to 30 full calendar days.	The reviewing Reliability Coordinator performed the review and provided the written feedback in accordance with Requirement R2, but was late by more than 30 full calendar days but less than or equal to 60 full calendar days.	The reviewing Reliability Coordinator performed the review and provided the written feedback in accordance with Requirement R2, but was late by more than 60 full calendar days but less than or equal to 90 full calendar days.	The reviewing Reliability Coordinator performed the review and provided the written feedback in accordance with Requirement R2, but was late by more than 90 full calendar days. OR The reviewing Reliability Coordinator failed to perform the review or provide feedback in accordance with Requirement R2.

R #	Violation Severity Levels			
	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R3.	N/A	N/A	N/A	The RAS-entity failed to resolve identified reliability issue(s) to obtain approval from each reviewing Reliability Coordinator prior to placing a new or functionally modified RAS in service or retiring an existing RAS in accordance with Requirement R3.
R4.	The Planning Coordinator performed the evaluation in accordance with Requirement R4, but was late by less than or equal to 30 full calendar days.	The Planning Coordinator performed the evaluation in accordance with Requirement R4, but was late by more than 30 full calendar days but less than or equal to 60 full calendar days.	The Planning Coordinator performed the evaluation in accordance with Requirement R4, but was late by more than 60 full calendar days but less than or equal to 90 full calendar days. OR The Planning Coordinator performed the evaluation in accordance with Requirement R4, but failed to evaluate one of the Parts 4.1.1 through 4.1.5.	The Planning Coordinator performed the evaluation in accordance with Requirement R4, but was late by more than 90 full calendar days. OR The Planning Coordinator performed the evaluation in accordance with Requirement R4, but failed to evaluate two or more of the Parts 4.1.1 through 4.1.5. OR

R #	Violation Severity Levels			
	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
				<p>The Planning Coordinator performed the evaluation in accordance with Requirement R4, but failed to provide the results to one or more of the receiving entities listed in Part 4.2.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>The Planning Coordinator failed to perform the evaluation in accordance with Requirement R4.</p>
R5.	<p>The RAS-entity performed the analysis in accordance with Requirement R5, but was late by less than or equal to 10 full calendar days.</p>	<p>The RAS-entity performed the analysis in accordance with Requirement R5, but was late by more than 10 full calendar days but less than or equal to 20 full calendar days.</p>	<p>The RAS-entity performed the analysis in accordance with Requirement R5, but was late by more than 20 full calendar days but less than or equal to 30 full calendar days.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>The RAS-entity performed the analysis in accordance with Requirement R5, but failed to address one of the Parts 5.1.1 through 5.1.4.</p>	<p>The RAS-entity performed the analysis in accordance with Requirement R5, but was late by more than 30 full calendar days.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>The RAS-entity performed the analysis in accordance with Requirement R5, but failed to address two or more of the Parts 5.1.1 through 5.1.4.</p>

R #	Violation Severity Levels			
	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
				<p>OR</p> <p>The RAS-entity performed the analysis in accordance with Requirement R5, but failed to provide the results (Part 5.2) to one or more of the reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s).</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The RAS-entity failed to perform the analysis in accordance with Requirement R5.</p>
R6.	The RAS-entity developed a Corrective Action Plan and submitted it to its reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) in accordance with Requirement R6, but was late by less than or equal to 10 full calendar days.	The RAS-entity developed a Corrective Action Plan and submitted it to its reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) in accordance with Requirement R6, but was late by more than 10 full calendar days but less than or equal to 20 full calendar days.	The RAS-entity developed a Corrective Action Plan and submitted it to its reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) in accordance with Requirement R6, but was late by more than 20 full calendar days but less than or equal to 30 full calendar days.	<p>The RAS-entity developed a Corrective Action Plan and submitted it to its reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) in accordance with Requirement R6, but was late by more than 30 full calendar days.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The RAS-entity developed a Corrective Action Plan but failed to submit it to one or</p>

R #	Violation Severity Levels			
	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
				<p>more of its reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) in accordance with Requirement R6.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>The RAS-entity failed to develop a Corrective Action Plan in accordance with Requirement R6.</p>
R7.	The RAS-entity implemented a CAP in accordance with Requirement R7, Part 7.1, but failed to update the CAP (Part 7.2) if actions or timetables changed, or failed to notify (Part 7.3) each of the reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) of the updated CAP or completion of the CAP.	N/A	N/A	The RAS-entity failed to implement a CAP in accordance with Requirement R7, Part 7.1.
R8.	The RAS-entity performed the functional test for a RAS as specified in Requirement R8, but was late by less than	The RAS-entity performed the functional test for a RAS as specified in Requirement R8, but was late by more than 30 full calendar days	The RAS-entity performed the functional test for a RAS as specified in Requirement R8, but was late by more than 60 full calendar days	The RAS-entity performed the functional test for a RAS as specified in Requirement R8, but was late by more than 90 full calendar days.

R #	Violation Severity Levels			
	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
	or equal to 30 full calendar days.	but less than or equal to 60 full calendar days.	but less than or equal to 90 full calendar days.	OR The RAS-entity failed to perform the functional test for a RAS as specified in Requirement R8.
R9.	The Reliability Coordinator updated the RAS database in accordance with Requirement R9, but was late by less than or equal to 30 full calendar days.	The Reliability Coordinator updated the RAS database in accordance with Requirement R9, but was late by more than 30 full calendar days but less than or equal to 60 full calendar days.	The Reliability Coordinator updated the RAS database in accordance with Requirement R9, but was late by more than 60 full calendar days but less than or equal to 90 full calendar days.	The Reliability Coordinator updated the RAS database in accordance with Requirement R9 but was late by more than 90 full calendar days. OR The Reliability Coordinator failed to update the RAS database in accordance with Requirement R9.

D. Regional Variances

None.

E. Associated Documents

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
0	February 8, 2005	Adopted by the Board of Trustees	
0	March 16, 2007	Identified by Commission as “fill-in-the-blank” with no action taken on the standard	
1	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the Board of Trustees	
1	November 19, 2015	Accepted by Commission for informational purposes only	
2	May 5, 2016	Adopted by Board of Trustees	
2	September 20, 2017	FERC Order No. 837 issued approving PRC-012-2	

Attachment 1 Supporting Documentation for RAS Review

The following checklist identifies important Remedial Action Scheme (RAS) information for each new or functionally modified² RAS that the RAS-entity must document and provide to the reviewing Reliability Coordinator(s) (RC). If an item on this list does not apply to a specific RAS, a response of “Not Applicable” for that item is appropriate. When RAS are submitted for functional modification review and approval, only the proposed modifications to that RAS require review; however, the RAS-entity must provide a summary of the existing functionality. The RC may request additional information on any aspect of the RAS as well as any reliability issue related to the RAS. Additional entities (without decision authority) may be part of the RAS review process at the request of the RC.

I. General

1. Information such as maps, one-line drawings, substation and schematic drawings that identify the physical and electrical location of the RAS and related facilities.
2. Functionality of new RAS or proposed functional modifications to existing RAS and documentation of the pre- and post-modified functionality of the RAS.
3. The Corrective Action Plan (CAP) if RAS modifications are proposed in a CAP.
4. Data to populate the RAS database:
 - a. RAS name.
 - b. Each RAS-entity and contact information.
 - c. Expected or actual in-service date; most recent RC-approval date (Requirement R3); most recent evaluation date (Requirement R4); and date of retirement, if applicable.
 - d. System performance issue or reason for installing the RAS (e.g., thermal overload, angular instability, poor oscillation damping, voltage instability, under- or over-voltage, or slow voltage recovery).
 - e. Description of the Contingencies or System conditions for which the RAS was designed (i.e., initiating conditions).
 - f. Action(s) to be taken by the RAS.
 - g. Identification of limited impact³ RAS.
 - h. Any additional explanation relevant to high-level understanding of the RAS.

² Functionally modified: Any modification to a RAS consisting of any of the following:

- Changes to System conditions or contingencies monitored by the RAS
- Changes to the actions the RAS is designed to initiate
- Changes to RAS hardware beyond in-kind replacement; i.e., match the original functionality of existing components
- Changes to RAS logic beyond correcting existing errors
- Changes to redundancy levels; i.e., addition or removal

³ A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations.

II. Functional Description and Transmission Planning Information

1. Contingencies and System conditions that the RAS is intended to remedy.
2. The action(s) to be taken by the RAS in response to disturbance conditions.
3. A summary of technical studies, if applicable, demonstrating that the proposed RAS actions satisfy System performance objectives for the scope of System events and conditions that the RAS is intended to remedy. The technical studies summary shall also include information such as the study year(s), System conditions, and Contingencies analyzed on which the RAS design is based, and the date those technical studies were performed.
4. Information regarding any future System plans that will impact the RAS.
5. RAS-entity proposal and justification for limited impact designation, if applicable.
6. Documentation describing the System performance resulting from the possible inadvertent operation of the RAS, except for limited impact RAS, caused by any single RAS component malfunction. Single component malfunctions in a RAS not determined to be limited impact must satisfy all of the following:
 - a. The BES shall remain stable.
 - b. Cascading shall not occur.
 - c. Applicable Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded.
 - d. BES voltages shall be within post-Contingency voltage limits and post-Contingency voltage deviation limits as established by the Transmission Planner and the Planning Coordinator.
 - e. Transient voltage responses shall be within acceptable limits as established by the Transmission Planner and the Planning Coordinator.
7. An evaluation indicating that the RAS settings and operation avoid adverse interactions with other RAS, and protection and control systems.
8. Identification of other affected RCs.

III. Implementation

1. Documentation describing the applicable equipment used for detection, dc supply, communications, transfer trip, logic processing, control actions, and monitoring.
2. Information on detection logic and settings/parameters that control the operation of the RAS.
3. Documentation showing that any multifunction device used to perform RAS function(s), in addition to other functions such as protective relaying or SCADA, does not compromise the reliability of the RAS when the device is not in service or is being maintained.
4. Documentation describing the System performance resulting from a single component failure in the RAS, except for limited impact RAS, when the RAS is intended to operate. A single component failure in a RAS not determined to be limited impact must not prevent the BES from meeting the same performance requirements (defined in Reliability Standard TPL-001-4 or its successor) as those required for the events and conditions for which the RAS is designed. The documentation should describe or illustrate how the design achieves this objective.
5. Documentation describing the functional testing process.

IV. RAS Retirement

The following checklist identifies RAS information that the RAS-entity shall document and provide to each reviewing RC.

1. Information necessary to ensure that the RC is able to understand the physical and electrical location of the RAS and related facilities.
2. A summary of applicable technical studies and technical justifications upon which the decision to retire the RAS is based.
3. Anticipated date of RAS retirement.

Attachment 2
Reliability Coordinator RAS Review Checklist

The following checklist identifies reliability-related considerations for the Reliability Coordinator (RC) to review and verify for each new or functionally modified⁴ Remedial Action Scheme (RAS). The RC review is not limited to the checklist items and the RC may request additional information on any aspect of the RAS as well as any reliability issue related to the RAS. If a checklist item is not relevant to a particular RAS, it should be noted as “Not Applicable.” If reliability considerations are identified during the review, the considerations and the proposed resolutions should be documented with the remaining applicable Attachment 2 items.

I. Design

1. The RAS actions satisfy performance objectives for the scope of events and conditions that the RAS is intended to mitigate.
2. The designed timing of RAS operation(s) is appropriate to its BES performance objectives.
3. The RAS arming conditions, if applicable, are appropriate to its System performance objectives.
4. The RAS avoids adverse interactions with other RAS, and protection and control systems.
5. The effects of RAS incorrect operation, including inadvertent operation and failure to operate, have been identified.
6. Determination whether or not the RAS is limited impact.⁵ A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations.
7. Except for limited impact RAS as determined by the RC, the possible inadvertent operation of the RAS resulting from any single RAS component malfunction satisfies all of the following:
 - a. The BES shall remain stable.
 - b. Cascading shall not occur.
 - c. Applicable Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded.

⁴ Functionally modified: Any modification to a RAS consisting of any of the following:

- Changes to System conditions or contingencies monitored by the RAS
- Changes to the actions the RAS is designed to initiate
- Changes to RAS hardware beyond in-kind replacement; i.e., match the original functionality of existing components
- Changes to RAS logic beyond correcting existing errors
- Changes to redundancy levels; i.e., addition or removal

⁵ A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations.

- d. BES voltages shall be within post-Contingency voltage limits and post-Contingency voltage deviation limits as established by the Transmission Planner and the Planning Coordinator.
 - e. Transient voltage responses shall be within acceptable limits as established by the Transmission Planner and the Planning Coordinator.
8. The effects of future BES modifications on the design and operation of the RAS have been identified, where applicable.

II. Implementation

1. The implementation of RAS logic appropriately correlates desired actions (outputs) with events and conditions (inputs).
2. Except for limited impact RAS as determined by the RC, a single component failure in a RAS does not prevent the BES from meeting the same performance requirements as those required for the events and conditions for which the RAS is designed.
3. The RAS design facilitates periodic testing and maintenance.
4. The mechanism or procedure by which the RAS is armed is clearly described, and is appropriate for reliable arming and operation of the RAS for the conditions and events for which it is designed to operate.

III. RAS Retirement

RAS retirement reviews should assure that there is adequate justification for why a RAS is no longer needed.

**Attachment 3
Database Information**

1. RAS name.
2. Each RAS-entity and contact information.
3. Expected or actual in-service date; most recent RC-approval date (Requirement R3); most recent evaluation date (Requirement R4); and date of retirement, if applicable.
4. System performance issue or reason for installing the RAS (e.g., thermal overload, angular instability, poor oscillation damping, voltage instability, under- or over-voltage, or slow voltage recovery).
5. Description of the Contingencies or System conditions for which the RAS was designed (i.e., initiating conditions).
6. Action(s) to be taken by the RAS.
7. Identification of limited impact⁶ RAS.
8. Any additional explanation relevant to high-level understanding of the RAS.

⁶ A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations.

Technical Justification

4.1.1 Reliability Coordinator

The Reliability Coordinator (RC) is the best-suited functional entity to perform the Remedial Action Scheme (RAS) review because the RC has the widest area reliability perspective of all functional entities and an awareness of reliability issues in neighboring RC Areas. The Wide Area purview better facilitates the evaluation of interactions among separate RAS, as well as interactions among RAS and other protection and control systems. The selection of the RC also minimizes the possibility of a conflict of interest that could exist because of business relationships among the RAS-entity, Planning Coordinator, Transmission Planner, or other entities involved in the planning or implementation of a RAS. The RC is also less likely to be a stakeholder in any given RAS and can therefore maintain objective independence.

4.1.2 Planning Coordinator

The Planning Coordinator (PC) is the best-suited functional entity to perform the RAS evaluation to verify the continued effectiveness and coordination of the RAS, its inadvertent operation performance, and the performance for a single component failure. The items that must be addressed in the evaluations include: 1) RAS mitigation of the System condition(s) or event(s) for which it was designed; 2) RAS avoidance of adverse interactions with other RAS and with protection and control systems; 3) the impact of inadvertent operation; and 4) the impact of a single component failure. The evaluation of these items involves modeling and studying the interconnected transmission system, similar to the planning analyses performed by PCs.

4.1.3 RAS-entity

The RAS-entity is any Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider that owns all or part of a RAS. If all of the RAS (RAS components) have a single owner, then that RAS-entity has sole responsibility for all the activities assigned within the standard to the RAS-entity. If the RAS (RAS components) have more than one owner, then each separate RAS component owner is a RAS-entity and is obligated to participate in various activities identified by the Requirements.

The standard does not stipulate particular compliance methods. RAS-entities have the option of collaborating to fulfill their responsibilities for each applicable requirement. Such collaboration and coordination may promote efficiency in achieving the reliability objectives of the requirements; however, the individual RAS-entity must be able to demonstrate its participation for compliance. As an example, the individual RAS-entities could collaborate to produce and submit a single, coordinated Attachment 1 to the reviewing RC pursuant to Requirement R1 to initiate the RAS review process.

Limited impact

RAS are unique and customized assemblages of protection and control equipment that vary in complexity and impact on the reliability of the BES. These differences in RAS design, action, and risk to the BES are identified and verified within the construct of Requirements R1-R4 of PRC-012-2.

The reviewing RC has the authority to designate a RAS as limited impact if the RAS cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled

separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations. The reviewing RC makes the final determination as to whether a RAS qualifies for the limited impact designation based upon the studies and other information provided with the Attachment 1 submittal by the RAS-entity.

The standard recognizes the Local Area Protection Scheme (LAPS) classification in WECC (Western Electricity Coordinating Council) and the Type III classification in NPCC (Northeast Power Coordinating Council) as initially appropriate for limited impact designation. The following information describing the aforementioned WECC and NPCC RAS is excerpted from the respective regional documentation⁷. The drafting team notes that the information below represents the state of the WECC and NPCC regional processes at the time of this standard development and is subject to change before the effective date of PRC-012-2.

WECC: Local Area Protection Scheme (LAPS)

A Remedial Action Scheme (RAS) whose failure to operate would NOT result in any of the following:

- Violations of TPL-001-WECC-RBP System Performance RBP,
- Maximum load loss ≥ 300 MW,
- Maximum generation loss ≥ 1000 MW.

NPCC: Type III

An SPS whose misoperation or failure to operate results in no **significant adverse impact** outside the **local area**.

The following terms are also defined by NPCC to assess the impact of the SPS for classification:

Significant adverse impact – With due regard for the maximum operating capability of the affected systems, one or more of the following conditions arising from faults or disturbances, shall be deemed as having significant adverse impact:

- a. system instability;
- b. unacceptable system dynamic response or equipment tripping;
- c. voltage levels in violation of applicable emergency limits;
- d. loadings on transmission facilities in violation of applicable emergency limits;
- e. unacceptable loss of load.

Local area – An electrically confined or radial portion of the system. The geographic size and number of system elements contained will vary based on system characteristics. A local area may be relatively large geographically with relatively few buses in a sparse system, or be

⁷ WECC Procedure to Submit a RAS for Assessment Information Required to Assess the Reliability of a RAS Guideline, Revised 10/28/2013 | NPCC Regional Reliability Reference Directory # 7, Special Protection Systems, Version 2, 3/31/2015

relatively small geographically with a relatively large number of buses in a densely networked system.

A RAS implemented prior to the effective date of PRC-012-2 that has been through the regional review processes of WECC or NPCC and classified as either a Local Area Protection Scheme (LAPS) in WECC or a Type III in NPCC, is recognized as a limited impact RAS upon the effective date of PRC-012-2 for the purposes of this standard and is subject to all applicable requirements.

To propose an existing RAS (a RAS implemented prior to the effective date of PRC-012-2) be designated as limited impact by the reviewing RC, the RAS-entity must prepare and submit the appropriate Attachment 1 information that includes the technical justification (evaluations) documenting that the System can meet the performance requirements (specified in Requirement R4, Parts 4.1.4 and 4.1.5) resulting from a single RAS component malfunction or failure, respectively.

There is nothing that precludes a RAS-entity from working with the reviewing RC during the implementation period of PRC-012-2, in anticipation of the standard becoming enforceable. However, even if the reviewing RC determines the RAS qualifies as limited impact, the designation is not relevant until the standard becomes effective. Until then, the existing regional processes remain in effect as well as the existing RAS classifications or lack thereof.

An example of a scheme that could be recognized as a limited impact RAS is a load shedding or generation rejection scheme used to mitigate the overload of a BES transmission line. The inadvertent operation of such a scheme would cause the loss of either a certain amount of generation or load. The evaluation by the RAS-entity should demonstrate that the loss of this amount of generation or load, without the associated contingency for RAS operation actually occurring, is acceptable and not detrimental to the reliability of BES; e.g., in terms of frequency and voltage stability. The failure of that scheme to operate when intended could potentially lead to the overloading of a transmission line beyond its acceptable rating. The RAS-entity would need to demonstrate that this overload, while in excess of the applicable Facility Rating, is not detrimental to the BES outside the contained area (predetermined by studies) affected by the contingency.

Other examples of limited impact RAS include:

- A scheme used to protect BES equipment from damage caused by overvoltage through generation rejection or equipment tripping.
- A centrally-controlled undervoltage load shedding scheme used to protect a contained area (predetermined by studies) of the BES against voltage collapse.
- A scheme used to trip a generating unit following certain BES Contingencies to prevent the unit from going out of synch with the System; where, if the RAS fails to operate and the unit pulls out of synchronism, the resulting apparent impedance swings do not

result in the tripping of any Transmission System Elements other than the generating unit and its directly connected Facilities.

Requirement R1

Each RAS is unique and its action(s) can have a significant impact on the reliability and integrity of the Bulk Electric System (BES); therefore, a review of a proposed new RAS or an existing RAS proposed for functional modification, or retirement (removal from service) must be completed prior to implementation.

Functional modifications consists of any of the following:

- Changes to System conditions or Contingencies monitored by the RAS
- Changes to the actions the RAS is designed to initiate
- Changes to RAS hardware beyond in-kind replacement; i.e., match the original functionality of existing components
- Changes to RAS logic beyond correcting existing errors
- Changes to redundancy levels; i.e., addition or removal

An example indicating the limits of an in-kind replacement of a RAS component is the replacement of one relay (or other device) with a relay (or other device) that uses similar functions. For instance, if a RAS included a CO-11 relay which was replaced by an IAC-53 relay, that would be an in-kind replacement. If the CO-11 relay were replaced by a microprocessor SEL-451 relay that used only the same functions as the original CO-11 relay, that would also be an in-kind replacement; however, if the SEL-451 relay was used to add new logic to what the CO-11 relay had provided, then the replacement relay would be a functional modification.

Changes to RAS pickup levels that require no other scheme changes are not considered a functional modification. For example, System conditions require a RAS to be armed when the combined flow on two lines exceeds 500 MW. If a periodic evaluation pursuant to Requirement R4, or other assessment, indicates that the arming level should be reduced to 450 MW without requiring any other RAS changes that would not be a functional modification. Similarly, if a RAS is designed to shed load to reduce loading on a particular line below 1000 amps, then a change in the load shedding trigger from 1000 amps to 1100 amps would not be a functional modification.

Another example illustrates a case where a System change may result in a RAS functional change. Assume that a generation center is connected to a load center through two transmission lines. The lines are not rated to accommodate full plant output if one line is out of service, so a RAS monitors the status of both lines and trips or ramps down the generation to a safe level following loss of either line. Later, one of the lines is tapped to serve additional load. The System that the RAS impacts now includes three lines, loss of any of which is likely to still require generation reduction. The modified RAS will need to monitor all three lines (add two line terminal status inputs to the RAS) and the logic to recognize the specific line outages would

change, while the generation reduction (RAS output) requirement may or may not change, depending on which line is out of service. These required RAS changes would be a functional modification.

Any functional modification to a RAS will need to be reviewed and approved through the process described in Requirements R1, R2, and R3. The need for such functional modifications may be identified in several ways including but not limited to the Planning evaluations pursuant to R4, incorrect operations pursuant to R5, a test failure pursuant to R8, or Planning assessments related to future additions or modifications of other facilities.

See Item 4a in the Implementation Section of Attachment 1 in the Supplemental Material section for typical RAS components for which a failure may be considered. The RC has the discretion to make the final determination regarding which components should be regarded as RAS components during its review.

To facilitate a review that promotes reliability, the RAS-entity(ies) must provide the reviewer with sufficient details of the RAS design, function, and operation. This data and supporting documentation are identified in Attachment 1 of this standard, and Requirement R1 mandates that the RAS-entity(ies) provide them to the reviewing Reliability Coordinator (RC). The RC that coordinates the area where the RAS is located is responsible for the review. In cases where a RAS crosses multiple RC Area boundaries, each affected RC is responsible for conducting either individual reviews or a coordinated review.

Requirement R1 does not specify how far in advance of implementation the RAS-entity(ies) must provide Attachment 1 data to the reviewing RC. The information will need to be submitted early enough to allow RC review in the allotted time pursuant to Requirement R2, including resolution of any reliability issues that might be identified, in order to obtain approval of the reviewing RC. Expedient submittal of this information is in the interest of each RAS-entity to effect a timely implementation.

Requirement R2

Requirement R2 mandates that the RC perform reviews of all proposed new RAS and existing RAS proposed for functional modification, or retirement (removal from service) in its RC Area.

RAS are unique and customized assemblages of protection and control equipment. As such, they have a potential to introduce reliability risks to the BES, if not carefully planned, designed, and installed. A RAS may be installed to address a reliability issue, or achieve an economic or operational advantage, and could introduce reliability risks that might not be apparent to a RAS-entity(ies). An independent review by a multi-disciplinary panel of subject matter experts with planning, operations, protection, telecommunications, and equipment expertise is an effective means of identifying risks and recommending RAS modifications when necessary.

The RC is the functional entity best suited to perform the RAS reviews because it has the widest area reliability perspective of all functional entities and an awareness of reliability issues in

neighboring RC Areas. This Wide Area purview facilitates the evaluation of interactions among separate RAS as well as interactions among the RAS and other protection and control systems.

The selection of the RC also minimizes the possibility of a “conflict of interest” that could exist because of business relationships among the RAS-entity, Planning Coordinator (PC), Transmission Planner (TP), or other entities that are likely to be involved in the planning or implementation of a RAS. The RC may request assistance in RAS reviews from other parties such as the PC(s) or regional technical groups (e.g., Regional Entities); however, the RC retains responsibility for compliance with the requirement. It is recognized that the RC does not possess more information or ability than anticipated by their functional registration as designated by NERC. The NERC Functional Model is a guideline for the development of standards and their applicability and does not contain compliance requirements. If Reliability Standards address functions that are not described in the model, the Reliability Standard requirements take precedence over the Functional Model. For further reference, please see the Introduction section of NERC’s Reliability Functional Model, Version 5, November 2009. Attachment 2 of this standard is a checklist for assisting the RC in identifying design and implementation aspects of a RAS, and for facilitating consistent reviews of each RAS submitted for review. The time frame of four full calendar months is consistent with current utility practice; however, flexibility is provided by allowing the parties to negotiate a different schedule for the review. Note, an RC may need to include this task in its reliability plan(s) for the NERC Region(s) in which it is located.

Requirement R3

Requirement R3 mandates that each RAS-entity resolve all reliability issues (pertaining to its RAS) identified during the RAS review by the reviewing Reliability Coordinators. Examples of reliability issues include a lack of dependability, security, or coordination. RC approval of a RAS is considered to be obtained when the reviewing RC’s feedback to each RAS-entity indicates that either no reliability issues were identified during the review or all identified reliability issues were resolved to the RC’s satisfaction.

Dependability is a component of reliability that is the measure of certainty of a device to operate when required. If a RAS is installed to meet performance requirements of NERC Reliability Standards, a failure of the RAS to operate when intended would put the System at risk of violating NERC Reliability Standards if specified Contingency(ies) or System conditions occur. This risk is mitigated by designing the RAS so that it will accomplish the intended purpose while experiencing a single RAS component failure. This is often accomplished through redundancy. Other strategies for providing dependability include “over-tripping” load or generation, or alternative automatic backup schemes.

Security is a component of reliability that is the measure of certainty of a device to not operate inadvertently. False or inadvertent operation of a RAS results in taking a programmed action without the appropriate arming conditions, occurrence of specified Contingency(ies), or System conditions expected to trigger the RAS action. Typical RAS actions include shedding load or generation or re-configuring the System. Such actions, if inadvertently taken, are undesirable

and may put the System in a less secure state. Worst case impacts from inadvertent operation often occur if all programmed RAS actions occur. If the System performance still satisfies PRC-012-2 Requirement R4, Part 4.3, no additional mitigation is required. Security enhancements to the RAS design, such as voting schemes, are acceptable mitigations against inadvertent operations.

Any reliability issue identified during the review must be resolved before implementing the RAS to avoid placing the System at unacceptable risk. The RAS-entity or the reviewing RC(s) may have alternative ideas or methods available to resolve the issue(s). In either case, the concern needs to be resolved in deference to reliability, and the RC has the final decision.

A specific time period for the RAS-entity to respond to the RC(s) review is not necessary because an expeditious response is in the interest of each RAS-entity to effect a timely implementation.

A specific time period for the RC to respond to the RAS-entity following the RAS review is also not necessary because the RC will be aware of (1) any reliability issues associated with the RAS not being in service and (2) the RAS-entity's schedule to implement the RAS to address those reliability issues. Since the RC is the ultimate arbiter of BES operating reliability, resolving reliability issues is a priority for the RC and serves as an incentive to expeditiously respond to the RAS-entity.

Requirement R4

Requirement R4 mandates that an evaluation of each RAS be performed at least once every five full calendar years. The purpose of a periodic RAS evaluation is to verify the continued effectiveness and coordination of the RAS, as well as to verify that requirements for BES performance following inadvertent RAS operation and single component failure continue to be satisfied. A periodic evaluation is required because changes in System topology or operating conditions may change the effectiveness of a RAS or the way it interacts with and impacts the BES.

A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations. Limited impact RAS are not subject to the RAS single component malfunction and failure tests of Parts 4.1.4 and 4.1.5, respectively. Requiring a limited impact RAS to meet these tests would add complexity to the design with minimal benefit to BES reliability.

A RAS implemented after the effective date of this standard can only be designated as limited impact by the reviewing RC(s). A RAS implemented prior to the effective date of PRC-012-2 that has been through the regional review processes of WECC or NPCC and is classified as either a Local Area Protection Scheme (LAPS) in WECC or a Type III in NPCC is recognized as a limited impact RAS upon the effective date of PRC-012-2 for the purposes of this standard and is subject to all applicable requirements.

Requirement R4 also clarifies that the RAS single component failure and inadvertent operation tests do not apply to RAS which are determined to be limited impact. Requiring a limited impact RAS to meet the single component failure and inadvertent operation tests would just add complexity to the design with little or no improvement in the reliability of the BES.

For existing RAS, the initial performance of Requirement R4 must be completed within five full calendar years of the effective date of PRC-012-2. For new or functionally modified RAS, the initial performance of the requirement must be completed within five full calendar years of the RAS approval date by the reviewing RC(s). Five full calendar years was selected as the maximum time frame between evaluations based on the time frames for similar requirements in Reliability Standards PRC-006, PRC-010, and PRC-014. The RAS evaluation can be performed sooner if it is determined that material changes to System topology or System operating conditions could potentially impact the effectiveness or coordination of the RAS. System changes also have the potential to alter the reliability impact of limited impact RAS on the BES. Requirement 4, Part 4.1.3 explicitly requires the periodic evaluation of limited impact RAS to verify the limited impact designation remains applicable. The periodic RAS evaluation will typically lead to one of the following outcomes: 1) affirmation that the existing RAS is effective; 2) identification of changes needed to the existing RAS; or, 3) justification for RAS retirement.

The items required to be addressed in the evaluations (Requirement R4, Parts 4.1.1 through 4.1.5) are planning analyses that may involve modeling of the interconnected transmission system to assess BES performance. The PC is the functional entity best suited to perform the analyses because they have a wide-area planning perspective. To promote reliability, the PC is required to provide the results of the evaluation to each impacted Transmission Planner and Planning Coordinator, in addition to each reviewing RC and RAS-entity. In cases where a RAS crosses PC boundaries, each affected PC is responsible for conducting either individual evaluations or participating in a coordinated evaluation.

The intent of Requirement R4, Part 4.1.4 is to verify that the possible inadvertent operation of the RAS (other than limited impact RAS), caused by the malfunction of a single component of the RAS, meet the same System performance requirements as those required for the Contingency(ies) or System conditions for which it is designed. If the RAS is designed to meet one of the planning events (P0-P7) in TPL-001-4, the possible inadvertent operation of the RAS must meet the same performance requirements listed in the standard for that planning event. The requirement clarifies that the inadvertent operation to be considered is only that caused by the malfunction of a single RAS component. This allows features to be designed into the RAS to improve security, such that inadvertent operation due to malfunction of a single component is prevented; otherwise, the RAS inadvertent operation must satisfy Requirement R4, Part 4.1.4.

The intent of Requirement R4, Part 4.1.4 is also to verify that the possible inadvertent operation of the RAS (other than limited impact RAS) installed for an extreme event in TPL-001-4 or for some other Contingency or System conditions not defined in TPL-001-4 (therefore without performance requirements), meet the minimum System performance requirements of Category P7 in Table 1 of NERC Reliability Standard TPL-001-4. However, instead of referring to the TPL

standard, the requirement lists the System performance requirements that a potential inadvertent operation must satisfy. The performance requirements listed (Requirement R4, Parts 4.1.4.1 – 4.1.4.5) are the ones that are common to all planning events (P0-P7) listed in TPL-001-4.

With reference to Requirement 4, Part 4.1.4, note that the only differences in performance requirements among the TPL (P0-P7) events (not common to all of them) concern Non-Consequential Load Loss and interruption of Firm Transmission Service. It is not necessary for Requirement R4, Part 4.1.4 to specify performance requirements related to these areas because a RAS is only allowed to drop non-consequential load or interrupt Firm Transmission Service if that action is allowed for the Contingency for which it is designed. Therefore, the inadvertent operation should automatically meet Non-Consequential Load Loss or interrupting Firm Transmission Service performance requirements for the Contingency(ies) for which it was designed.

The intent of Requirement R4, Part 4.1.5 is to verify that a single component failure in a RAS, other than limited impact RAS, when the RAS is intended to operate, does not prevent the BES from meeting the same performance requirements (defined in Reliability Standard TPL-001-4 or its successor) as those required for the events and conditions for which the RAS is designed. This analysis is needed to ensure that changing System conditions do not result in the single component failure requirement not being met.

The following is an example of a single component failure causing the System to fail to meet the performance requirements for the P1 event for which the RAS was installed. Consider the instance where a three-phase Fault (P1 event) results in a generating plant becoming unstable (a violation of the System performance requirements of TPL-001-4). To resolve this, a RAS is installed to trip a single generating unit which allows the remaining units at the plant to remain stable. If failure of a single component (e.g., relay) in the RAS results in the RAS failing to operate for the P1 event, the generating plant would become unstable (failing to meet the System performance requirements of TPL-001-4 for a P1 event).

Requirement R4, Part 4.1.5 does not mandate that all RAS have redundant components. For example:

- Consider the instance where a RAS is installed to mitigate an extreme event in TPL-001-4. There are no System performance requirements for extreme events; therefore, the RAS does not need redundancy to meet the same performance requirements as those required for the events and conditions for which the RAS was designed.
- Consider a RAS that arms more load or generation than necessary such that failure of the RAS to drop a portion of load or generation due to that single component failure will still result in satisfactory System performance, as long as tripping the total armed amount of load or generation does not cause other adverse impacts to reliability.

The scope of the periodic evaluation does not include a new review of the physical implementation of the RAS, as this was confirmed by the RC during the initial review and verified by subsequent functional testing. However, it is possible that a RAS design which previously satisfied requirements for inadvertent RAS operation and single component failure by means other than component redundancy may fail to satisfy these requirements at a later time, and must be evaluated with respect to the current System. For example, if the actions of a particular RAS include tripping load, load growth could occur over time that impacts the amount of load to be tripped. These changes could result in tripping too much load upon inadvertent operation and result in violations of Facility Ratings. Alternatively, the RAS might be designed to trip more load than necessary (i.e., “over trip”) in order to satisfy single component failure requirements. System changes could result in too little load being tripped and unacceptable BES performance if one of the loads failed to trip.

Requirement R5

The correct operation of a RAS is important to maintain the reliability and integrity of the BES. Any incorrect operation of a RAS indicates the RAS effectiveness and/or coordination may have been compromised. Therefore, all operations of a RAS and failures of a RAS to operate when expected must be analyzed to verify that the RAS operation was consistent with its intended functionality and design.

A RAS operational performance analysis is intended to: (1) verify RAS operation is consistent with implemented design; or (2) identify RAS performance deficiencies that manifested in the incorrect RAS operation or failure of RAS to operate when expected.

The 120 full calendar day time frame for the completion of RAS operational performance analysis aligns with the time frame established in Requirement R1 from PRC-004-4 regarding the investigation of a Protection System Misoperation; however, flexibility is provided by allowing the parties to negotiate a different schedule for the analysis. To promote reliability, the RAS-entity(s) is required to provide the results of RAS operational performance analyses to its reviewing RC(s) if the analyses revealed a deficiency.

The RAS-entity(ies) may need to collaborate with its associated Transmission Planner to comprehensively analyze RAS operational performance. This is because a RAS operational performance analysis involves verifying that the RAS operation was triggered correctly (Part 5.1.1), responded as designed (Part 5.1.2), and that the resulting BES response (Parts 5.1.3 and 5.1.4) was consistent with the intended functionality and design of the RAS. Ideally, when there is more than one RAS-entity for a RAS, the RAS-entities would collaborate to conduct and submit a single, coordinated operational performance analysis.

Requirement R6

RAS deficiencies potentially pose a reliability risk to the BES. RAS deficiencies may be identified in the periodic RAS evaluation conducted by the PC in Requirement R4, in the operational analysis conducted by the RAS-entity in Requirement R5, or in the functional test performed by the RAS-entity(ies) in Requirement R8. To mitigate potential reliability risks, Requirement R6

mandates that each RAS-entity participate in developing a CAP that establishes the mitigation actions and timetable necessary to address the deficiency.

The RAS-entity(ies) that owns the RAS components, is responsible for the RAS equipment, and is in the best position to develop the timelines and perform the necessary work to correct RAS deficiencies. If necessary, the RAS-entity(ies) may request assistance with development of the CAP from other parties such as its Transmission Planner or Planning Coordinator; however, the RAS-entity has the responsibility for compliance with this requirement.

A CAP may require functional changes be made to a RAS. In this case, Attachment 1 information must be submitted to the reviewing RC(s), an RC review must be performed to obtain RC approval before the RAS-entity can place RAS modifications in service, per Requirements R1, R2, and R3.

Depending on the complexity of the issues, development of a CAP may require study, engineering or consulting work. A timeframe of six full calendar months is allotted to allow enough time for RAS-entity collaboration on the CAP development, while ensuring that deficiencies are addressed in a reasonable time. Ideally, when there is more than one RAS-entity for a RAS, the RAS-entities would collaborate to develop and submit a single, coordinated CAP. A RAS deficiency may require the RC or Transmission Operator to impose operating restrictions so the System can operate in a reliable way until the RAS deficiency is resolved. The possibility of such operating restrictions will incent the RAS-entity to resolve the issue as quickly as possible.

The following are example situations of when a CAP is required:

- A determination after a RAS operation/non-operation investigation that the RAS did not meet performance expectations or did not operate as designed.
- Periodic planning assessment reveals RAS changes are necessary to correct performance or coordination issues.
- Equipment failures.
- Functional testing identifies that a RAS is not operating as designed.

Requirement R7

Requirement R7 mandates that each RAS-entity implement its CAP developed in Requirement R6 which mitigates the deficiencies identified in Requirements R4, R5, or R8. By definition, a CAP is: "A list of actions and an associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem."

A CAP can be modified if necessary to account for adjustments to the actions or scheduled timetable of activities. If the CAP is changed, the RAS-entity must notify the reviewing Reliability

Coordinator(s). The RAS-entity must also notify the Reliability Coordinator(s) when the CAP has been completed.

The implementation of a properly developed CAP ensures that RAS deficiencies are mitigated in a timely manner. A RAS deficiency may require the RC or Transmission Operator to impose operating restrictions so the System can operate in a reliable way until the CAP is completed. The possibility of such operating restrictions will incent the RAS-entity to complete the CAP as quickly as possible.

Requirement R8

The reliability objective of Requirement R8 is to test the non-Protection System components of a RAS (controllers such as programmable logic controllers (PLCs)) and to verify the overall performance of the RAS through functional testing. Functional tests validate RAS operation by ensuring System states are detected and processed, and that actions taken by the controls are correct and occur within the expected time using the in-service settings and logic. Functional testing is aimed at assuring overall RAS performance and not the component focused testing contained in the PRC-005 maintenance standard.

Since the functional test operates the RAS under controlled conditions with known System states and expected results, testing and analysis can be performed with minimum impact to the BES and should align with expected results. The RAS-entity is in the best position to determine the testing procedure and schedule due to their overall knowledge of the RAS design, installation, and functionality. Periodic testing provides the RAS-entity assurance that latent failures may be identified and also promotes identification of changes in the System that may have introduced latent failures.

The six and twelve full calendar year functional testing intervals are greater than the annual or bi-annual periodic testing performed in some NERC Regions. However, these intervals are a balance between the resources required to perform the testing and the potential reliability impacts to the BES created by undiscovered latent failures that could cause an incorrect operation of the RAS. Longer test intervals for limited impact RAS are acceptable because incorrect operations or failures to operate present a low reliability risk to the Bulk Power System.

Functional testing is not synonymous with end-to-end testing. End-to-end testing is an acceptable method but may not be feasible for many RAS. When end-to-end testing is not possible, a RAS-entity may use a segmented functional testing approach. The segments can be tested individually negating the need for complex maintenance schedules. In addition, actual RAS operation(s) can be used to fulfill the functional testing requirement. If a RAS does not operate in its entirety during a System event or System conditions do not allow an end-to-end scheme test, then the segmented approach should be used to fulfill this Requirement. Functional testing includes the testing of all RAS inputs used for detection, arming, operating, and data collection. Functional testing, by default operates the processing logic and infrastructure of a RAS, but focuses on the RAS inputs as well as the actions initiated by RAS

outputs to address the System condition(s) for which the RAS is designed. All segments and components of a RAS must be tested or have proven operations within the applicable maximum test interval to demonstrate compliance with the Requirement.

As an example of segment testing, consider a RAS controller implemented using a PLC that receives System data, such as loading or line status, from distributed devices. These distributed devices could include meters, protective relays, or other PLCs. In this example RAS, a line protective relay is used to provide an analog metering quantity to the RAS control PLC. A functional test would verify that the System data is received from the protective relay by the PLC, processed by the PLC, and that PLC outputs are appropriate. There is no need to verify the protective relay's ability to measure the power system quantities, as this is a requirement for Protection Systems used as RAS in PRC-005, Table 1-1, Component Type – Protective Relay. Rather the functional test is focused on the use of the protective relay data at the PLC, including the communications data path from relay to PLC if this data is essential for proper RAS operation. Additionally, if the control signal back to the protective relay is also critical to the proper functioning of this example RAS, then that path is also verified up to the protective relay. This example describes a test for one segment of a RAS which verifies RAS action, verifies PLC control logic, and verifies RAS communications.

IEEE C37.233, "IEEE Guide for Power System Protection Testing," 2009 section 8 (particularly 8.3-8.5), provides an overview of functional testing. The following opens section 8.3:

Proper implementation requires a well-defined and coordinated test plan for performance evaluation of the overall system during agreed maintenance intervals. The maintenance test plan, also referred to as functional system testing, should include inputs, outputs, communication, logic, and throughput timing tests. The functional tests are generally not component-level testing, rather overall system testing. Some of the input tests may need to be done ahead of overall system testing to the extent that the tests affect the overall performance. The test coordinator or coordinators need to have full knowledge of the intent of the scheme, isolation points, simulation scenarios, and restoration to normal procedures.

The concept is to validate the overall performance of the scheme, including the logic where applicable, to validate the overall throughput times against system modeling for different types of Contingencies, and to verify scheme performance as well as the inputs and outputs.

If a RAS passes a functional test, it is not necessary to provide that specific information to the RC because that is the expected result and requires no further action. If a segment of a RAS fails a functional test, the status of that degraded RAS is required to be reported (in Real-time) to the Transmission Operator via PRC-001, Requirement R6, then to the RC via TOP-001-3, Requirement R8. See Phase 2 of Project 2007-06 for the mapping document from PRC-001 to other standards regarding notification of RC by TOP if a deficiency is found during testing. Consequently, it is not necessary to include a similar requirement in this standard.

The initial test interval begins on the effective date of the standard pursuant to the implementation plan. Subsequently, the maximum allowable interval between functional tests

is six full calendar years for RAS that are not designated as limited impact RAS and twelve full calendar years for RAS that are designated as limited impact RAS. The interval between tests begins on the date of the most recent successful test for each individual segment or end-to-end test. A successful test of one segment only resets the test interval clock for that segment. A RAS-entity may choose to count a correct RAS operation as a qualifying functional test for those RAS segments which operate. If a System event causes a correct, but partial RAS operation, separate functional tests of the segments that did not operate are still required within the maximum test interval that started on the date of the previous successful test of those (non-operating) segments in order to be compliant with Requirement R8.

Requirement R9

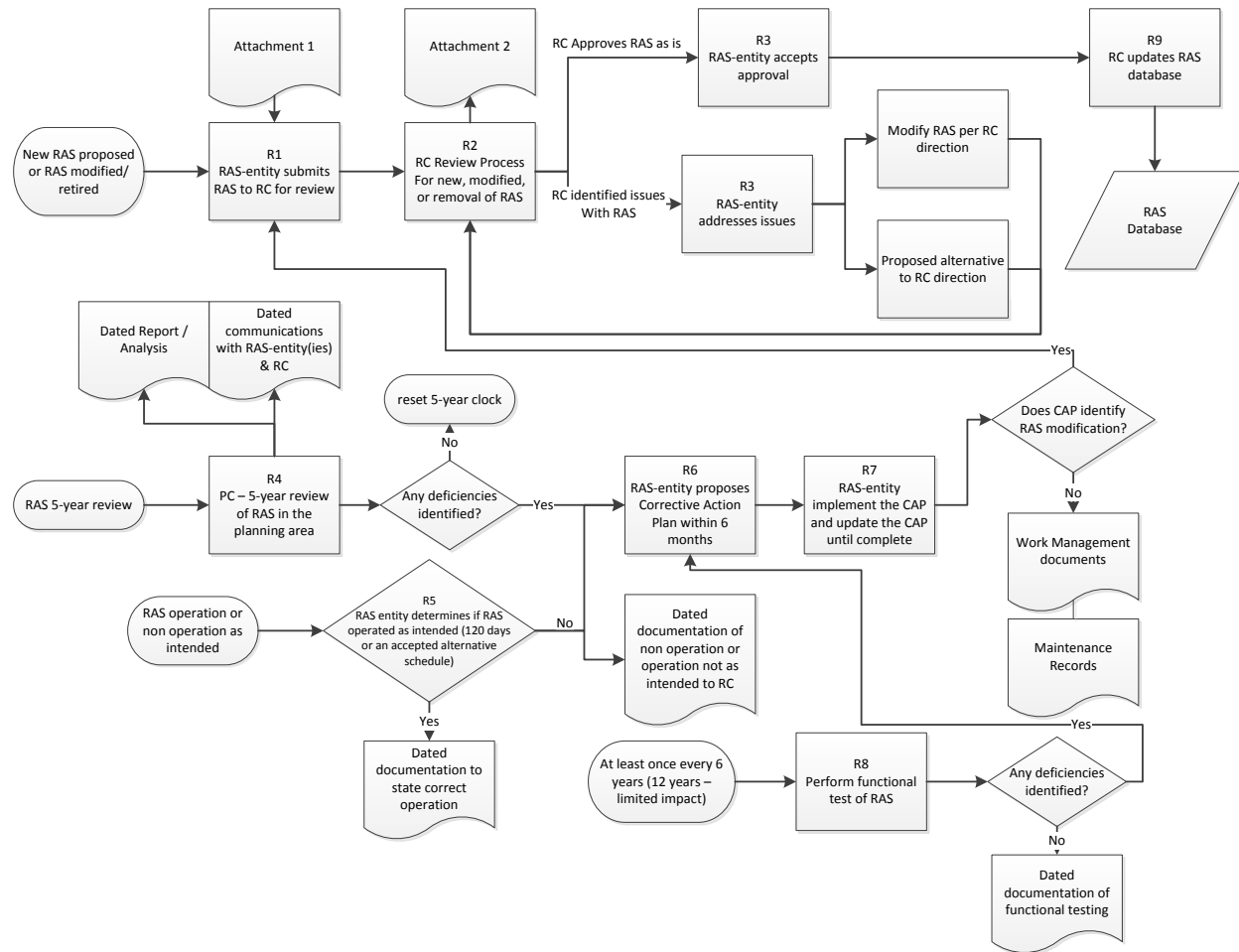
The RAS database required to be maintained by the RC in Requirement R9 ensures information regarding existing RAS is available. Attachment 3 contains the minimum information that is required to be included about each RAS listed in the database. Additional information can be requested by the RC.

The database enables the RC to provide other entities high-level information on existing RAS that could potentially impact the operational and/or planning activities of that entity. The information provided is sufficient for an entity with a reliability need to evaluate whether the RAS can impact its System. For example, a RAS performing generation rejection to mitigate an overload on a transmission line may cause a power flow change within an adjacent entity area. This entity should be able to evaluate the risk that a RAS poses to its System from the high-level information provided in the RAS database.

The RAS database does not need to list detailed settings or modeling information, but the description of the System performance issues, System conditions, and the intended corrective actions must be included. If additional details about the RAS operation are required, the entity may obtain the contact information of the RAS-entity from the RC.

Process Flow Diagram

The diagram below depicts the process flow of the PRC-012-2 requirements.



Technical Justifications for Attachment 1 Content Supporting Documentation for RAS Review

To perform an adequate review of the expected reliability implications of a Remedial Action Scheme (RAS), it is necessary for the RAS-entity(ies) to provide a detailed list of information describing the RAS to the reviewing RC. If there are multiple RAS-entities for a single RAS, information will be needed from all RAS-entities. Ideally, in such cases, a single RAS-entity will take the lead to compile all the data identified into a single Attachment 1.

The necessary data ranges from a general overview of the RAS to summarized results of transmission planning studies, to information about hardware used to implement the RAS. Coordination between the RAS and other RAS and protection and control systems will be examined for possible adverse interactions. This review can include wide-ranging electrical design issues involving the specific hardware, logic, telecommunications, and other relevant equipment and controls that make up the RAS.

Attachment 1

The following checklist identifies important RAS information for each new or functionally modified⁸ RAS that the RAS-entity shall document and provide to the RC for review pursuant to Requirement R1. When a RAS has been previously reviewed, only the proposed modifications to that RAS require review; however, it will be helpful to each reviewing RC if the RAS-entity provides a summary of the existing RAS functionality.

I. General

1. Information such as maps, one-line drawings, substation and schematic drawings that identify the physical and electrical location of the RAS and related facilities.

Provide a description of the RAS to give an overall understanding of the functionality and a map showing the location of the RAS. Identify other protection and control systems requiring coordination with the RAS. See RAS Design below for additional information.

Provide a single-line drawing(s) showing all sites involved. The drawing(s) should provide sufficient information to allow the RC review team to assess design reliability, and should include information such as the bus arrangement, circuit breakers, the associated switches, etc. For each site, indicate whether detection, logic, action, or a combination of these is present.

2. Functionality of new RAS or proposed functional modifications to existing RAS and documentation of the pre- and post-modified functionality of the RAS.

⁸ Functionally modified: Any modification to a RAS consisting of any of the following:

- Changes to System conditions or contingencies monitored by the RAS
- Changes to the actions the RAS is designed to initiate
- Changes to RAS hardware beyond in-kind replacement; i.e., match the original functionality of existing components
- Changes to RAS logic beyond correcting existing errors
- Changes to redundancy levels; i.e., addition or removal

3. The Corrective Action Plan (CAP) if RAS modifications are proposed in a CAP.
[Reference NERC Reliability Standard PRC-012-2, Requirements R5 and R7]

Provide a description of any functional modifications to a RAS that are part of a CAP that are proposed to address performance deficiency(ies) identified in the periodic evaluation pursuant to Requirement R4, the analysis of an actual RAS operation pursuant to Requirement R5, or functional test failure pursuant to Requirement R8. A copy of the most recent CAP must be submitted in addition to the other data specified in Attachment 1.

4. Initial data to populate the RAS database.
 - a. RAS name.
 - b. Each RAS-entity and contact information.
 - c. Expected or actual in-service date; most recent (Requirement R3) RC-approval date; most recent five full calendar year (Requirement R4) evaluation date; and, date of retirement, if applicable.
 - d. System performance issue or reason for installing the RAS (*e.g.*, thermal overload, angular instability, poor oscillation damping, voltage instability, under-/over-voltage, slow voltage recovery).
 - e. Description of the Contingencies or System conditions for which the RAS was designed (initiating conditions).
 - f. Corrective action taken by the RAS.
 - g. Identification of limited impact⁹ RAS.
 - h. Any additional explanation relevant to high level understanding of the RAS.

Note: This is the same information as is identified in Attachment 3. Supplying the data at this point in the review process ensures a more complete review and minimizes any administrative burden on the reviewing RC(s).

II. Functional Description and Transmission Planning Information

1. Contingencies and System conditions that the RAS is intended to remedy.
[Reference NERC Reliability Standards PRC-012, R1.2 and PRC-013, R1.1]
 - a. The System conditions that would result if no RAS action occurred should be identified.
 - b. Include a description of the System conditions that should arm the RAS so as to be ready to take action upon subsequent occurrence of the critical System Contingencies or other operating conditions when RAS action is intended to occur. If no arming conditions are required, this should also be stated.

⁹ A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations.

- c. Event-based RAS are triggered by specific Contingencies that initiate mitigating action. Condition-based RAS may also be initiated by specific Contingencies, but specific Contingencies are not always required. These triggering Contingencies and/or conditions should be identified.
2. The actions to be taken by the RAS in response to disturbance conditions.
[Reference NERC Reliability Standards PRC-012, R1.2 and PRC-013, R1.2]

Mitigating actions are designed to result in acceptable System performance. These actions should be identified, including any time constraints and/or “backup” mitigating measures that may be required in case of a single RAS component failure.
3. A summary of technical studies, if applicable, demonstrating that the proposed RAS actions satisfy System performance objectives for the scope of System events and conditions that the RAS is intended to remedy. The technical studies summary shall also include information such as the study year(s), System conditions, and Contingencies analyzed on which the RAS design is based, and the date those technical studies were performed. [Reference NEC Reliability Standard PRC-014, R3.2]

Review the scheme purpose and impact to ensure it is (still) necessary, serves the intended purposes, and meets current performance requirements. While copies of the full, detailed studies may not be necessary, any abbreviated descriptions of the studies must be detailed enough to allow the reviewing RC(s) to be convinced of the need for the scheme and the results of RAS-related operations.
4. Information regarding any future System plans that will impact the RAS.
[Reference NERC Reliability Standard PRC-014, R3.2]

The RC’s other responsibilities under the NERC Reliability Standards focus on the Operating Horizon, rather than the Planning Horizon. As such, the RC is less likely to be aware of any longer range plans that may have an impact on the proposed RAS. Such knowledge of future Plans is helpful to provide perspective on the capabilities of the RAS.
5. RAS-entity proposal and justification for limited impact designation, if applicable.

A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations. A RAS implemented prior to the effective date of PRC-012-2 that has been through the regional review processes of WECC or NPCC and is classified as either a Local Area Protection Scheme (LAPS) in WECC or a Type 3 in NPCC is recognized as a limited impact RAS upon the effective date of PRC-012-2 for the purposes of this standard and is subject to all applicable requirements.
6. Documentation describing the System performance resulting from the possible inadvertent operation of the RAS, except for limited impact RAS, caused by any single RAS component malfunction. Single component malfunctions in a RAS not determined to be limited impact must satisfy all of the following:
[Reference NERC Reliability Standard PRC-012, R1.4]

- a. The BES shall remain stable.
 - b. Cascading shall not occur.
 - c. Applicable Facility Ratings shall not be exceeded.
 - d. BES voltages shall be within post-Contingency voltage limits and post-Contingency voltage deviation limits as established by the Transmission Planner and the Planning Coordinator.
 - e. Transient voltage responses shall be within acceptable limits as established by the Transmission Planner and the Planning Coordinator.
7. An evaluation indicating that the RAS settings and operation avoids adverse interactions with other RAS, and protection and control systems.

[Reference NERC Reliability Standards PRC-012, R1.5 and PRC-014, R3.4]

RAS are complex schemes that may take action such as tripping load or generation or re-configuring the System. Many RAS depend on sensing specific System configurations to determine whether they need to arm or take actions. An examples of an adverse interaction: A RAS that reconfigures the System also changes the available Fault duty, which can affect distance relay overcurrent (“fault detector”) supervision and ground overcurrent protection coordination.

8. Identification of other affected RCs.

This information is needed to aid in information exchange among all affected entities and coordination of the RAS with other RAS and protection and control systems.

III. Implementation

1. Documentation describing the applicable equipment used for detection, dc supply, communications, transfer trip, logic processing, control actions, and monitoring.

Detection

Detection and initiating devices, whether for arming or triggering action, should be designed to be secure. Several types of devices have been commonly used as disturbance, condition, or status detectors:

- Line open status (event detectors),
- Protective relay inputs and outputs (event and parameter detectors),
- Transducer and IED (analog) inputs (parameter and response detectors),
- Rate of change (parameter and response detectors).

DC Supply

Batteries and charges, or other forms of dc supply for RAS, are commonly also used for Protection Systems. This is acceptable, and maintenance of such supplies is covered by PRC-005. However, redundant RAS, when used, should be supplied from separately protected (fused or breakered) circuits.

Communications: Telecommunications Channels

Telecommunications channels used for sending and receiving RAS information between sites and/or transfer trip devices should meet at least the same criteria as other relaying protection communication channels. Discuss performance of any non-deterministic communication systems used (such as Ethernet).

The scheme logic should be designed so that loss of the channel, noise, or other channel or equipment failure will not result in a false operation of the scheme.

It is highly desirable that the channel equipment and communications media (power line carrier, microwave, optical fiber, etc.) be owned and maintained by the RAS-entity, or perhaps leased from another entity familiar with the necessary reliability requirements. All channel equipment should be monitored and alarmed to the dispatch center so that timely diagnostic and repair action shall take place upon failure. Publicly switched telephone networks are generally an undesirable option.

Communication channels should be well labeled or identified so that the personnel working on the channel can readily identify the proper circuit. Channels between entities should be identified with a common name at all terminals.

Transfer Trip

Transfer trip equipment, when separate from other RAS equipment, should be monitored and labeled similarly to the channel equipment.

Logic Processing

All RAS require some form of logic processing to determine the action to take when the scheme is triggered. Required actions are always scheme dependent. Different actions may be required at different arming levels or for different Contingencies. Scheme logic may be achievable by something as simple as wiring a few auxiliary relay contacts or by much more complex logic processing.

Platforms that have been used reliably and successfully include PLCs in various forms, personal computers (PCs), microprocessor protective relays, remote terminal units (RTUs), and logic processors. Single-function relays have been used historically to implement RAS, but this approach is now less common except for very simple new RAS or minor additions to existing RAS.

Control Actions

RAS action devices may include a variety of equipment such as transfer trip, protective relays, and other control devices. These devices receive commands from the logic processing function (perhaps through telecommunication facilities) and initiate RAS actions at the sites where action is required.

Monitoring by SCADA/EMS should include at least

- Whether the scheme is in service or out of service.
 - For RAS that are armed manually, the arming status may be the same as whether the RAS is in service or out of service.

- For RAS that are armed automatically, these two states are independent because a RAS that has been placed in service may be armed or unarmed based on whether the automatic arming criteria have been met.
 - The current operational state of the scheme (available or not).
 - In cases where the RAS requires single component failure performance; e.g., redundancy, the minimal status indications should be provided separately for each RAS.
 - The minimum status is generally sufficient for operational purposes; however, where possible it is often useful to provide additional information regarding partial failures or the status of critical components to allow the RAS-entity to more efficiently troubleshoot a reported failure. Whether this capability exists will depend in part on the design and vintage of equipment used in the RAS. While all schemes should provide the minimum level of monitoring, new schemes should be designed with the objective of providing monitoring at least similar to what is provided for microprocessor-based Protection Systems.
2. Information on detection logic and settings/parameters that control the operation of the RAS. [\[Reference NERC Reliability Standards PRC-012, R1.2 and PRC-013, R1.3\]](#)

Several methods to determine line or other equipment status are in common use, often in combination:

- a. Auxiliary switch contacts from circuit breakers and disconnect switches (52a/b, 89a/b)—the most common status monitor; “a” contacts exactly emulate actual breaker status, while “b” contacts are opposite to the status of the breaker;
- b. Undercurrent detection—a low level indicates an open condition, including at the far end of a line; pickup is typically slightly above the total line-charging current;
- c. Breaker trip coil current monitoring—typically used when high-speed RAS response is required, but usually in combination with auxiliary switch contacts and/or other detection because the trip coil current ceases when the breaker opens; and
- d. Other detectors such as angle, voltage, power, frequency, rate of change of the aforementioned, out of step, etc. are dependent on specific scheme requirements, but some forms may substitute for or enhance other monitoring described in items ‘a’, ‘b’, and ‘c’ above.

Both RAS arming and action triggers often require monitoring of analog quantities such as power, current, and voltage at one or more locations and are set to detect a specific level of the pertinent quantity. These monitors may be relays, meters, transducers, or other devices

3. Documentation showing that any multifunction device used to perform RAS function(s), in addition to other functions such as protective relaying or SCADA, does not compromise the reliability of the RAS when the device is not in service or is being maintained.

In this context, a multifunction device (e.g., microprocessor-based relay) is a single component that is used to perform the function of a RAS in addition to protective relaying and/or SCADA simultaneously. It is important that other applications in the multifunction device do not compromise the functionality of the RAS when the device is in service or when it is being maintained. The following list outlines considerations when the RAS function is applied in the same microprocessor-based relay as equipment protection functions:

- a. Describe how the multifunction device is applied in the RAS.
- b. Show the general arrangement and describe how the multi-function device is labeled in the design and application, so as to identify the RAS and other device functions.
- c. Describe the procedures used to isolate the RAS function from other functions in the device.
- d. Describe the procedures used when each multifunction device is removed from service and whether coordination with other protection schemes is required.
- e. Describe how each multifunction device is tested, both for commissioning and during periodic maintenance testing, with regard to each function of the device.
- f. Describe how overall periodic RAS functional and throughput tests are performed if multifunction devices are used for both local protection and RAS.
- g. Describe how upgrades to the multifunction device, such as firmware upgrades, are accomplished. How is the RAS function taken into consideration?

Other devices that are usually not considered multifunction devices such as auxiliary relays, control switches, and instrument transformers may serve multiple purposes such as protection and RAS. Similar concerns apply for these applications as noted above.

4. Documentation describing the System performance resulting from a single component failure in the RAS, except for limited impact RAS, when the RAS is intended to operate. A single component failure in a RAS not determined to be limited impact must not prevent the BES from meeting the same performance requirements (defined in Reliability Standard TPL-001-4 or its successor) as those required for the events and conditions for which the RAS is designed. The documentation should describe or illustrate how the design achieves this objective. [\[Reference NERC Reliability Standard PRC-012, R1.3\]](#)

RAS automatic arming, if applicable, is vital to RAS and System performance and is therefore included in this requirement.

Acceptable methods to achieve this objective include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Providing redundancy of RAS components. Typical examples are listed below:
 - i. Protective or auxiliary relays used by the RAS.

- ii. Communications systems necessary for correct operation of the RAS.
 - iii. Sensing devices used to measure electrical or other quantities used by the RAS.
 - iv. Station dc supply associated with RAS functions.
 - v. Control circuitry associated with RAS functions through the trip coil(s) of the circuit breakers or other interrupting devices.
 - vi. Logic processing devices that accept System inputs from RAS components or other sources, make decisions based on those inputs, or initiate output signals to take remedial actions.
- b. Arming more load or generation than necessary such that failure of the RAS to drop a portion of load or generation due to that single component failure will still result in satisfactory System performance, as long as tripping the total armed amount of load or generation does not cause other adverse impacts to reliability.
 - c. Using alternative automatic actions to back up failures of single RAS components.
 - d. Manual backup operations, using planned System adjustments such as Transmission configuration changes and re-dispatch of generation, if such adjustments are executable within the time duration applicable to the Facility Ratings.
5. Documentation describing the functional testing process.

IV. RAS Retirement

The following checklist identifies important RAS information for each existing RAS to be retired that the RAS-entity shall document and provide to the Reliability Coordinator for review pursuant to Requirement R1.

1. Information necessary to ensure that the Reliability Coordinator is able to understand the physical and electrical location of the RAS and related facilities.
2. A summary of technical studies and technical justifications, if applicable, upon which the decision to retire the RAS is based.
3. Anticipated date of RAS retirement.

While the documentation necessary to evaluate RAS removals is not as extensive as for new or functionally modified RAS, it is still vital that, when the RAS is no longer available, System performance will still meet the appropriate (usually TPL) requirements for the Contingencies or System conditions that the RAS had been installed to remediate.

Technical Justification for Attachment 2 Content

Reliability Coordinator RAS Review Checklist

Attachment 2 is a checklist provided to facilitate consistent reviews continent-wide for new or functionally modified RAS prior to the RAS installation. The checklist is meant to assist the RC in identifying reliability-related considerations relevant to various aspects of RAS design and implementation.

Technical Justifications for Attachment 3 Content

Database Information

Attachment 3 contains the minimum information that the RC must consolidate into its database for each RAS in its area.

1. RAS name.
 - The name used to identify the RAS.
2. Each RAS-entity and contact information.
 - A reliable phone number or email address should be included to contact each RAS-entity if more information is needed.
3. Expected or actual in-service date; most recent (Requirement R3) RC-approval date; most recent five full calendar year (Requirement R4) evaluation date; and, date of retirement, if applicable.
 - Specify each applicable date.
4. System performance issue or reason for installing the RAS (e.g., thermal overload, angular instability, poor oscillation damping, voltage instability, under-/over-voltage, slow voltage recovery).
 - A short description of the reason for installing the RAS is sufficient, as long as the main System issues addressed by the RAS can be identified by someone with a reliability need.
5. Description of the Contingencies or System conditions for which the RAS was designed (initiating conditions).
 - A high level summary of the conditions/Contingencies is expected. Not all combinations of conditions are required to be listed.
6. Corrective action taken by the RAS.
 - A short description of the actions should be given. For schemes shedding load or generation, the maximum amount of megawatts should be included.

Supplemental Material

7. Identification of limited impact¹⁰ RAS.
 - Specify whether or not the RAS is designated as limited impact.
8. Any additional explanation relevant to high-level understanding of the RAS.
 - If deemed necessary, any additional information can be included in this section, but is not mandatory.

¹⁰ A RAS designated as limited impact cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations.

Rationale

Rationale for Requirement R1: Each Remedial Action Scheme (RAS) is unique and its action(s) can have a significant impact on the reliability and integrity of the Bulk Electric System (BES). Therefore, a review of a proposed new RAS or an existing RAS proposed for functional modification or retirement; i.e., removal from service must be completed prior to implementation or retirement.

Functional modifications consist of any of the following:

- Changes to System conditions or Contingencies monitored by the RAS
- Changes to the actions the RAS is designed to initiate
- Changes to RAS hardware beyond in-kind replacement; i.e., match the original functionality of existing components
- Changes to RAS logic beyond correcting existing errors
- Changes to redundancy levels; i.e., addition or removal

To facilitate a review that promotes reliability, the RAS-entity must provide the reviewer with sufficient details of the RAS design, function, and operation. This data and supporting documentation are identified in Attachment 1 of this standard, and Requirement R1 mandates that the RAS-entity provide them to the reviewing Reliability Coordinator (RC). The RC (reviewing RC) that coordinates the area where the RAS is located is responsible for the review. Ideally, when there is more than one RAS-entity for a RAS, the RAS-entities would collaborate and submit a single, coordinated Attachment 1 to the reviewing RC. In cases where a RAS crosses RC Area boundaries, each affected RC is responsible for conducting either individual reviews or participating in a coordinated review.

Rationale for Requirement R2: The RC is the functional entity best suited to perform the RAS review because it has the widest area operational and reliability perspective of all functional entities and an awareness of reliability issues in any neighboring RC Area. This Wide Area purview facilitates the evaluation of interactions among separate RAS as well as interactions among RAS and other protection and control systems. Review by the RC also minimizes the possibility of a conflict of interest that could exist because of business relationships among the RAS-entity, Planning Coordinator (PC), Transmission Planner (TP), or other entities that are likely to be involved in the planning or implementation of a RAS. The RC is not expected to possess more information or ability than anticipated by their functional registration as designated by NERC. The RC may request assistance to perform RAS reviews from other parties such as the PC or regional technical groups; however, the RC will retain the responsibility for compliance with this requirement.

Attachment 2 of this standard is a checklist the RC can use to identify design and implementation aspects of RAS and facilitate consistent reviews for each submitted RAS. The time frame of four full calendar months is consistent with current utility and regional practice;

however, flexibility is provided by allowing the RC(s) and RAS-entity(ies) to negotiate a mutually agreed upon schedule for the review.

Note: An RC may need to include this task in its reliability plan(s) for the NERC Region(s) in which it is located.

Rationale for Requirement R3: The RC review is intended to identify reliability issues that must be resolved before the RAS can be put in service. Examples of reliability issues include a lack of dependability, security, or coordination.

A specific time period for the RAS-entity to respond to the reviewing RC following identification of any reliability issue(s) is not necessary because the RAS-entity wants to expedite the timely approval and subsequent implementation of the RAS.

A specific time period for the RC to respond to the RAS-entity following the RAS review is also not necessary because the RC will be aware of (1) any reliability issues associated with the RAS not being in service and (2) the RAS-entity's schedule to implement the RAS to address those reliability issues. Since the RC is the ultimate arbiter of BES operating reliability, resolving reliability issues is a priority for the RC and serves as an incentive to expeditiously respond to the RAS-entity.

Rationale for Requirement R4: Requirement R4 mandates that an evaluation of each RAS be performed at least once every five full calendar years. The purpose of the periodic RAS evaluation is to verify the continued effectiveness and coordination of the RAS, as well as to verify that, if a RAS single component malfunction or single component failure were to occur, the requirements for BES performance would continue to be satisfied. A periodic evaluation is required because changes in System topology or operating conditions may change the effectiveness of a RAS or the way it impacts the BES.

RAS are unique and customized assemblages of protection and control equipment that vary in complexity and impact on the reliability of the BES. In recognition of these differences, RAS can be designated by the reviewing RC(s) as limited impact. A limited impact RAS cannot, by inadvertent operation or failure to operate, cause or contribute to BES Cascading, uncontrolled separation, angular instability, voltage instability, voltage collapse, or unacceptably damped oscillations. The "BES" qualifier in the preceding statement modifies all of the conditions that follow it. Limited impact RAS are not subject to the RAS single component malfunction and failure tests of Parts 4.1.4 and 4.1.5, respectively. Requiring a limited impact RAS to meet these tests would add complexity to the design with minimal benefit to BES reliability. See the Supplemental Material for more on the limited impact designation.

The standard recognizes the Local Area Protection Scheme (LAPS) classification in WECC (Western Electricity Coordinating Council) and the Type III classification in NPCC (Northeast Power Coordinating Council) as initially appropriate for limited impact designation. A RAS implemented prior to the effective date of PRC-012-2 that has been through the regional

review processes of WECC or NPCC and is classified as either a Local Area Protection Scheme (LAPS) in WECC or a Type III in NPCC is recognized as a limited impact RAS upon the effective date of PRC-012-2 for the purposes of this standard and is subject to all applicable requirements.

For existing RAS, the initial performance of Requirement R4 must be completed within five full calendar years of the effective date of PRC-012-2. For new or functionally modified RAS, the initial performance of the requirement must be completed within five full calendar years of the RAS approval date by the reviewing RC(s). Five full calendar years was selected as the maximum time frame between evaluations based on the time frames for similar requirements in Reliability Standards PRC-006, PRC-010, and PRC-014. The RAS evaluation can be performed sooner if it is determined that material changes to System topology or System operating conditions could potentially impact the effectiveness or coordination of the RAS. System changes also have the potential to alter the reliability impact of limited impact RAS on the BES. Requirement 4, Part 4.1.3 explicitly requires the periodic evaluation of limited impact RAS to verify the limited impact designation remains applicable; the PC can use its discretion as to how this evaluation is performed. The periodic RAS evaluation will typically lead to one of the following outcomes: 1) affirmation that the existing RAS is effective; 2) identification of changes needed to the existing RAS; or, 3) justification for RAS retirement.

The items required to be addressed in the evaluations (Requirement R4, Parts 4.1.1 through 4.1.5) are planning analyses that may involve modeling of the interconnected transmission system to assess BES performance. The Planning Coordinator (PC) is the functional entity best suited to perform this evaluation because they have a wide area planning perspective. To promote reliability, the PC is required to provide the results of the evaluation to each impacted Transmission Planner and Planning Coordinator, in addition to each reviewing RC and RAS-entity. In cases where a RAS crosses PC boundaries, each affected PC is responsible for conducting either individual evaluations or participating in a coordinated evaluation.

The previous version of this standard (PRC-012-1 Requirement 1, R1.4) states "... the inadvertent operation of a RAS shall meet the same performance requirement (TPL-001-0, TPL-002-0, and TPL-003-0) as that required of the Contingency for which it was designed, and not exceed TPL-003-0." Requirement R4 clarifies that the inadvertent operation to be considered would only be that caused by the malfunction of a single RAS component. This allows security features to be designed into the RAS such that inadvertent operation due to a single component malfunction is prevented. Otherwise, consistent with PRC-012-1 Requirement 1, R1.4, the RAS should be designed so that its whole or partial inadvertent operation due to a single component malfunction satisfies the System performance requirements for the same Contingency for which the RAS was designed.

If the RAS was installed for an extreme event in TPL-001-4 or for some other Contingency or System condition not defined in TPL-001-4 (therefore without performance requirements), its inadvertent operation still must meet some minimum System performance requirements. However, instead of referring to the TPL-001-4, Requirement R4 lists the System performance

requirements that the inadvertent operation must satisfy. The performance requirements listed (Parts 4.1.4.1 – 4.1.4.5) are the ones that are common to all planning events P0-P7 listed in TPL-001-4.

Rationale for Requirement R5: The correct operation of a RAS is important for maintaining the reliability and integrity of the BES. Any incorrect operation of a RAS indicates that the RAS effectiveness and/or coordination has been compromised. Therefore, all operations of a RAS and failures of a RAS to operate when expected must be analyzed to verify that the RAS operation was consistent with its intended functionality and design.

A RAS operational performance analysis is intended to: 1) verify RAS operation was consistent with the implemented design; or 2) identify RAS performance deficiencies that manifested in the incorrect RAS operation or failure of RAS to operate when expected.

The 120 full calendar day time frame for the completion of RAS operational performance analysis aligns with the time frame established in Requirement R1 from PRC-004-4 regarding the investigation of a Protection System Misoperation. To promote reliability, each RAS-entity is required to provide the results of RAS operational performance analyses that identified any deficiencies to its reviewing RC(s).

RAS-entities may need to collaborate with their associated Transmission Planner to comprehensively analyze RAS operational performance. This is because a RAS operational performance analysis involves verifying that the RAS operation was triggered correctly (Part 5.1.1), responded as designed (Part 5.1.2), and that the resulting BES response (Parts 5.1.3 and 5.1.4) was consistent with the intended functionality and design of the RAS. Ideally, when there is more than one RAS-entity for a RAS, the RAS-entities would collaborate to conduct and submit a single, coordinated operational performance analysis.

Rationale for Requirement R6: Deficiencies identified in the periodic RAS evaluation conducted by the PC pursuant to Requirement R4, in the operational performance analysis conducted by the RAS-entity pursuant to Requirement R5, or in the functional test performed by the RAS-entity pursuant to Requirement R8, potentially pose a reliability risk to the BES. To mitigate these potential reliability risks, Requirement R6 mandates that each RAS-entity develop a Corrective Action Plan (CAP) to address the identified deficiency. The CAP contains the mitigation actions and associated timetable necessary to remedy the specific deficiency. The RAS-entity may request assistance with CAP development from other parties such as its Transmission Planner or Planning Coordinator; however, the RAS-entity has the responsibility for compliance with this requirement.

If the CAP requires that a functional change be made to a RAS, the RAS-entity will need to submit information identified in Attachment 1 to the reviewing RC(s) prior to placing RAS modifications in service per Requirement R1.

Depending on the complexity of the identified deficiency(ies), development of a CAP may require studies, and other engineering or consulting work. A maximum time frame of six full calendar months is specified for RAS-entity collaboration on the CAP development. Ideally, when there is more than one RAS-entity for a RAS, the RAS-entities would collaborate to develop and submit a single, coordinated CAP.

Rationale for Requirement R7: Requirement R7 mandates each RAS-entity implement a CAP (developed in Requirement R6) that mitigates the deficiencies identified in Requirements R4, R5, or R8. By definition, a CAP is: “A list of actions and an associated timetable for implementation to remedy a specific problem.” The implementation of a properly developed CAP ensures that RAS deficiencies are mitigated in a timely manner. Each reviewing Reliability Coordinator must be notified if CAP actions or timetables change, and when the CAP is completed.

Rationale for Requirement R8: Due to the wide variety of RAS designs and implementations, and the potential for impacting BES reliability, it is important that periodic functional testing of a RAS be performed. A functional test provides an overall confirmation of the RAS to operate as designed and verifies the proper operation of the non-Protection System (control) components of a RAS that are not addressed in PRC-005. Protection System components that are part of a RAS are maintained in accordance with PRC-005.

The six or twelve full calendar year test interval, which begins on the effective date of the standard pursuant to the PRC-012-2 implementation plan, is a balance between the resources required to perform the testing and the potential reliability impacts to the BES created by undiscovered latent failures that could cause an incorrect operation of the RAS. Extending to longer intervals increases the reliability risk to the BES posed by an undiscovered latent failure that could cause an incorrect operation or failure of the RAS. The RAS-entity is in the best position to determine the testing procedure and schedule due to its overall knowledge of the RAS design, installation, and functionality. Functional testing may be accomplished with end-to-end testing or a segmented approach. For segmented testing, each segment of a RAS must be tested. Overlapping segments can be tested individually negating the need for complex maintenance schedules and outages.

The maximum allowable interval between functional tests is six full calendar years for RAS that are not designated as limited impact RAS and twelve full calendar years for RAS that are designated as limited impact RAS. The interval between tests begins on the date of the most recent successful test for each individual segment or end-to-end test. A successful test of one segment only resets the test interval clock for that segment. A correct operation of a RAS qualifies as a functional test for those RAS segments which operate (documentation for compliance with Requirement R5 Part 5.1). If an event causes a partial operation of a RAS, the segments without an operation will require a separate functional test within the maximum interval with the starting date determined by the previous successful test of the segments that did not operate.

Rationale for Requirement R9: The RAS database is a comprehensive record of all RAS existing in a Reliability Coordinator Area. The database enables the RC to provide other entities high-level information on existing RAS that could potentially impact the operational and/or planning activities of that entity. Attachment 3 lists the minimum information required for the RAS database, which includes a summary of the RAS initiating conditions, corrective actions, and System issues being mitigated. This information allows an entity to evaluate the reliability need for requesting more detailed information from the RAS-entities identified in the database contact information. The RC is the appropriate entity to maintain the database because the RC receives the required database information when a new or modified RAS is submitted for review. The twelve full calendar month time frame is aligned with industry practice and allows sufficient time for the RC to collect the appropriate information from RAS-entities and update the RAS database.

Appendix PRC-012-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-012-2 – Remedial Action Schemes

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.

2. **Number:** No specific provisions.

3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.

4. **Applicability:**

4.1. **Functional Entities**

No specific provisions.

4.2. **Facilities**

No specific provisions.

5. **Effective date:**

5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.3. Effective date of the standard and
of this appendix in Québec: Month xx, 20xx
The requirements will be implemented on the following dates:

Requirement	Implementation date
R1, R2, R3, R5, R6, R7	<ul style="list-style-type: none">30 months after the effective date of the standard
R4	<ul style="list-style-type: none">54 months after the effective date of the standard: Deadline to complete and send a first assessment.
R8	<ul style="list-style-type: none">66 months after the effective date of the standard: Deadline to complete a first test of RAS not designated as limited impact.138 months after the effective date of the standard: deadline to complete a first test of RAS designated as limited impact.
R9	<ul style="list-style-type: none">30 months after the effective date of the standard: Deadline to establish a RAS database.

B. Requirements and Measures

Replace all references to "BES" with "RTP."

Specific provision applicable to Requirement R8:

Requirement R8 applies as stipulated in the Standard, except for those Remedial Action Schemes (RAS) installed prior to the effective date of the Standard, in which case Requirement R8 is replaced by the following text:

Appendix PRC-012-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-012-2 – Remedial Action Schemes

R8: Unless the Compliance Enforcement Authority has granted a technical feasibility exception for a functional test, each RAS-entity shall participate in performing a functional test of each of its RAS to verify the overall RAS performance and the proper operation of non-Protection System components: [Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]

- At least once every six full calendar years for all RAS not designated as limited impact, or
- At least once every twelve full calendar years for all RAS designated as limited impact.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

In Québec, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means the Régie de l’énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

1.2. Evidence Retention

No specific provisions.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Enforcement Program

The Régie de l’énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

Violation Severity Levels

No specific provisions.

D. Regional Variances

No specific provisions.

E. Associated Documents

No specific provisions.

Attachment 1

Replace all references to “BES” with “RTP.”

Attachment 2

Replace all references to “BES” with “RTP.”

Attachment 3

No specific provisions.

Technical Justification

Replace all references to “BES” with “RTP.”

Page 21, replace the second full paragraph with the following (changes underlined):

Appendix PRC-012-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-012-2 – Remedial Action Schemes

To propose an existing Remedial Action Scheme (a RAS implemented prior to the effective date of PRC-012-2) be designated as limited impact by the reviewing RC, the RAS-entity must prepare and submit the appropriate Attachment 1 information, including the technical justification (evaluations) documenting that the System can meet the performance requirements (Requirement R4, Part 4.1.3) resulting from a single RAS component malfunction or failure, respectively.

Page 24, replace the last paragraph with the following (changes underlined):

Security is a component of reliability that is a measure of certainty that a device will not operate inadvertently. False or inadvertent operation of a RAS trips a programmed action without the appropriate arming conditions, occurrence of specified Contingency(ies) or System conditions expected to trigger a RAS action. Typical RAS actions include shedding load or generation or reconfiguring the System. Such actions, if inadvertently taken, are undesirable and may compromise System security. Worst-case impacts from inadvertent operation often occur if all programmed RAS actions occur. If System performance still satisfies PRC-012-2 Requirement R4, Part 4.1.4, no additional mitigation is required. Security enhancements to the RAS design, such as voting schemes, are acceptable mitigations against inadvertent operations.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

- 1. Title:** Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection
- 2. Number:** PRC-019-2
- 3. Purpose:** To verify coordination of generating unit Facility or synchronous condenser voltage regulating controls, limit functions, equipment capabilities and Protection System settings.
- 4. Applicability:**
 - 4.1. Functional Entities**
 - 4.1.1** Generator Owner
 - 4.1.2** Transmission Owner that owns synchronous condenser(s)
 - 4.2. Facilities**

For the purpose of this standard, the term, “applicable Facility” shall mean any one of the following:

 - 4.2.1** Individual generating unit greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.
 - 4.2.2** Individual synchronous condenser greater than 20 MVA (gross nameplate rating) directly connected to the Bulk Electric System.
 - 4.2.3** Generating plant/ Facility consisting of one or more units that are connected to the Bulk Electric System at a common bus with total generation greater than 75 MVA (gross aggregate nameplate rating).
 - 4.2.3.1** This includes individual generating units of the dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition where voltage regulating control for the facility is performed solely at the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources.
 - 4.2.4** Any generator, regardless of size, that is a blackstart unit material to and designated as part of a Transmission Operator’s restoration plan.
- 5. Effective Date:**

See the Implementation Plan for PRC-019-2.

B. Requirements

- R1.** At a maximum of every five calendar years, each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities shall coordinate the voltage regulating system controls, (including in-service¹ limiters and protection functions) with the applicable

¹ Limiters or protection functions that are installed and activated on the generator or synchronous condenser.

Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

equipment capabilities and settings of the applicable Protection System devices and functions. [*Violation Risk Factor: Medium*] [*Time Horizon: Long-term Planning*]

- 1.1. Assuming the normal automatic voltage regulator control loop and steady-state system operating conditions, verify the following coordination items for each applicable Facility:
 - 1.1.1. The in-service limiters are set to operate before the Protection System of the applicable Facility in order to avoid disconnecting the generator unnecessarily.
 - 1.1.2. The applicable in-service Protection System devices are set to operate to isolate or de-energize equipment in order to limit the extent of damage when operating conditions exceed equipment capabilities or stability limits.
- R2. Within 90 calendar days following the identification or implementation of systems, equipment or setting changes that will affect the coordination described in Requirement R1, each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities shall perform the coordination as described in Requirement R1. These possible systems, equipment or settings changes include, but are not limited to the following [*Violation Risk Factor: Medium*] [*Time Horizon: Long-term Planning*]:
 - Voltage regulating settings or equipment changes;
 - Protection System settings or component changes;
 - Generating or synchronous condenser equipment capability changes; or
 - Generator or synchronous condenser step-up transformer changes.

C. Measures

- M1. Each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities will have evidence (such as examples provided in PRC-019 Section G) that it coordinated the voltage regulating system controls, including in-service² limiters and protection functions, with the applicable equipment capabilities and settings of the applicable Protection System devices and functions as specified in Requirement R1. This evidence should include dated documentation that demonstrates the coordination was performed.
- M2. Each Generator Owner and Transmission Owner with applicable Facilities will have evidence of the coordination required by the events listed in Requirement R2. This evidence should include dated documentation that demonstrates the specified intervals in Requirement R2 have been met.

² Limiters or protection functions that are installed and activated on the generator or synchronous condenser.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

The Regional Entity shall serve as the Compliance enforcement authority unless the applicable entity is owned, operated, or controlled by the Regional Entity. In such cases the ERO or a Regional entity approved by FERC or other applicable governmental authority shall serve as the CEA.

1.2. Evidence Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify a period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention specified below is shorter than the time since the last compliance audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner and Transmission Owner shall retain evidence of compliance with Requirements R1 and R2, Measures M1 and M2 for six years.

If a Generator Owner or Transmission Owner is found non-compliant, the entity shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved or for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last periodic audit report and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None

Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 4 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years plus 4 months but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 8 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 5 calendar years plus 8 months but less than or equal to 5 calendar years plus 12 months after the previous coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner failed to coordinate equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 within 5 calendar years plus 12 months after the previous coordination.
R2	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 100 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 100 calendar days but less than or equal to 110 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner coordinated equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 more than 110 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.	The Generator Owner or Transmission Owner failed to coordinate equipment capabilities, limiters, and protection specified in Requirement R1 within 120 calendar days following the identification or implementation of a change in equipment or settings that affected the coordination.

E. Regional Variances

None.

F. Associated Documents

“Underexcited Operation of Turbo Generators”, AIEE Proceedings T Section 881, Volume 67, 1948, Appendix 1, C. G. Adams and J. B. McClure.

,”Protective Relaying For Power Generation Systems”, Boca Raton, FL, Taylor & Francis, 2006, Reimert, Donald

Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

“Coordination of Generator Protection with Generator Excitation Control and Generator Capability”, a report of Working Group J5 of the IEEE PSRC Rotating Machinery Subcommittee

“IEEE C37.102-2006 IEEE Guide for AC Generator Protection”

“IEEE C50.13-2005 IEEE Standard for Cylindrical-Rotor 50 Hz and 60 Hz Synchronous Generators Rated 10 MVA and Above”

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	February 7, 2013	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	New
1	March 20, 2014	FERC Order issued approving PRC-019-1. (Order becomes effective on 7/1/16.)	
2	February 12, 2015	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-019-2	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

G. Reference

Examples of Coordination

The evidence of coordination associated with Requirement R1 may be in the form of:

- P-Q Diagram (Example in Attachment 1), or
- R-X Diagram (Example in Attachment 2), or
- Inverse Time Diagram (Example in Attachment 3) or,
- Equivalent tables or other evidence

This evidence should include the equipment capabilities and the operating region for the limiters and protection functions

Equipment limits, types of limiters and protection functions which could be coordinated include (but are not limited to):

- Field over-excitation limiter and associated protection functions.
- Inverter over current limit and associated protection functions.
- Field under-excitation limiter and associated protection functions.
- Generator or synchronous condenser reactive capabilities.
- Volts per hertz limiter and associated protection functions.
- Stator over-voltage protection system settings.
- Generator and transformer volts per hertz capability.
- Time vs. field current or time vs. stator current.

NOTE: This listing is for reference only. This standard does not require the installation or activation of any of the above limiter or protection functions.

For this example, the Steady State Stability Limit (SSSL) is the limit to synchronous stability in the under-excited region with fixed field current.

On a P-Q diagram using X_d as the direct axis saturated synchronous reactance of the generator, X_s as the equivalent reactance between the generator terminals and the “infinite bus” including the reactance of the generator step-up transformer and V_g as the generator terminal voltage (all values in per-unit), the SSSL can be calculated as an arc with the center on the Q axis with the magnitude of the center and radius described by the following equations

Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

$$C = V_g^2/2*(1/X_s-1/X_d)$$

$$R = V_g^2/2*(1/X_s+1/X_d)$$

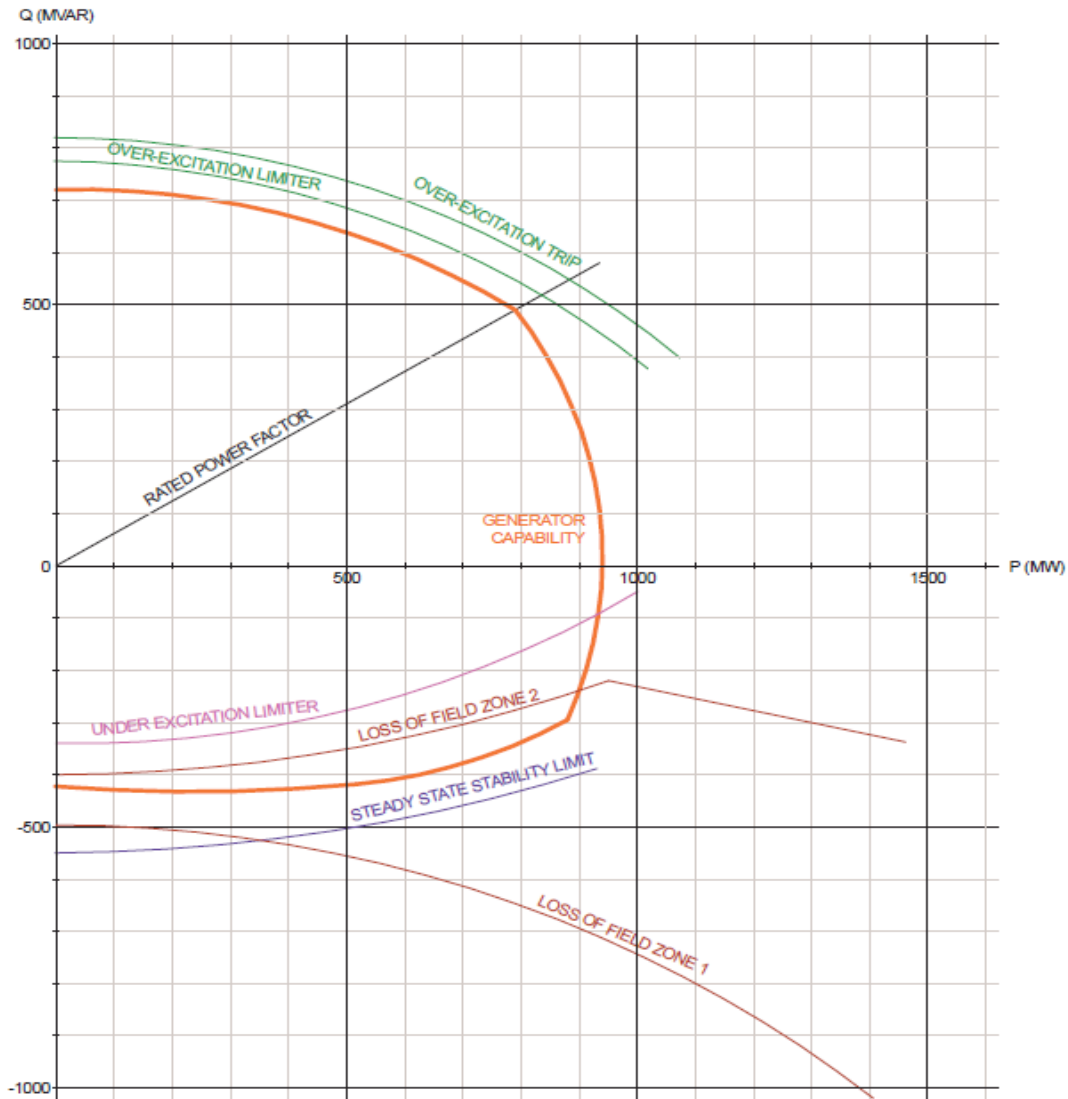
On an R-X diagram using X_d as the direct axis saturated synchronous reactance of the generator, and X_s as the equivalent reactance between the generator terminals and the “infinite bus” including the reactance of the generator step-up transformer the SSSL is an arc with the center on the X axis with the center and radius described by the following equations:

$$C = (X_d-X_s)/2$$

$$R = (X_d+X_s)/2$$

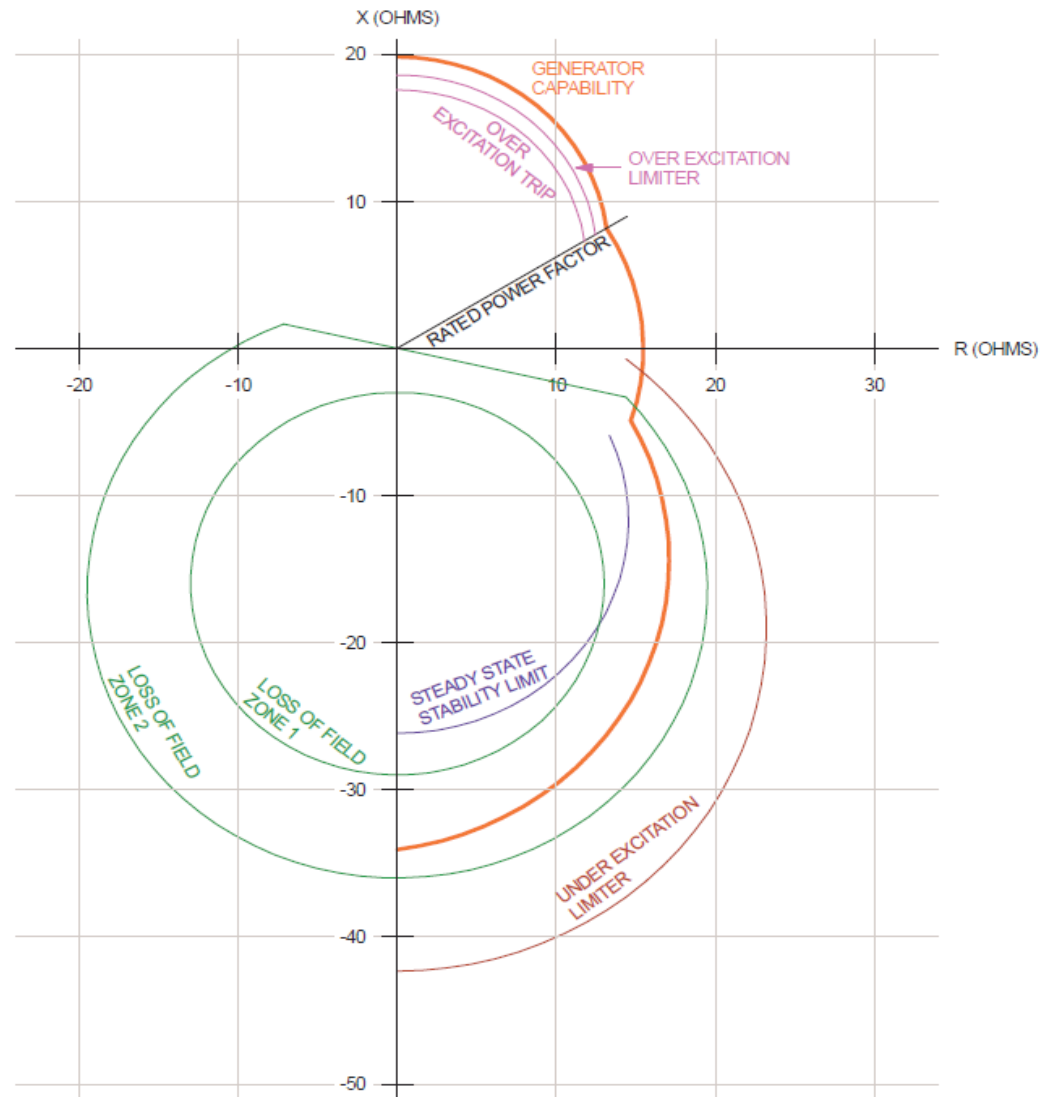
Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

Section G Attachment 1 – Example of Capabilities, Limiters and Protection on a P-Q Diagram at nominal voltage and frequency



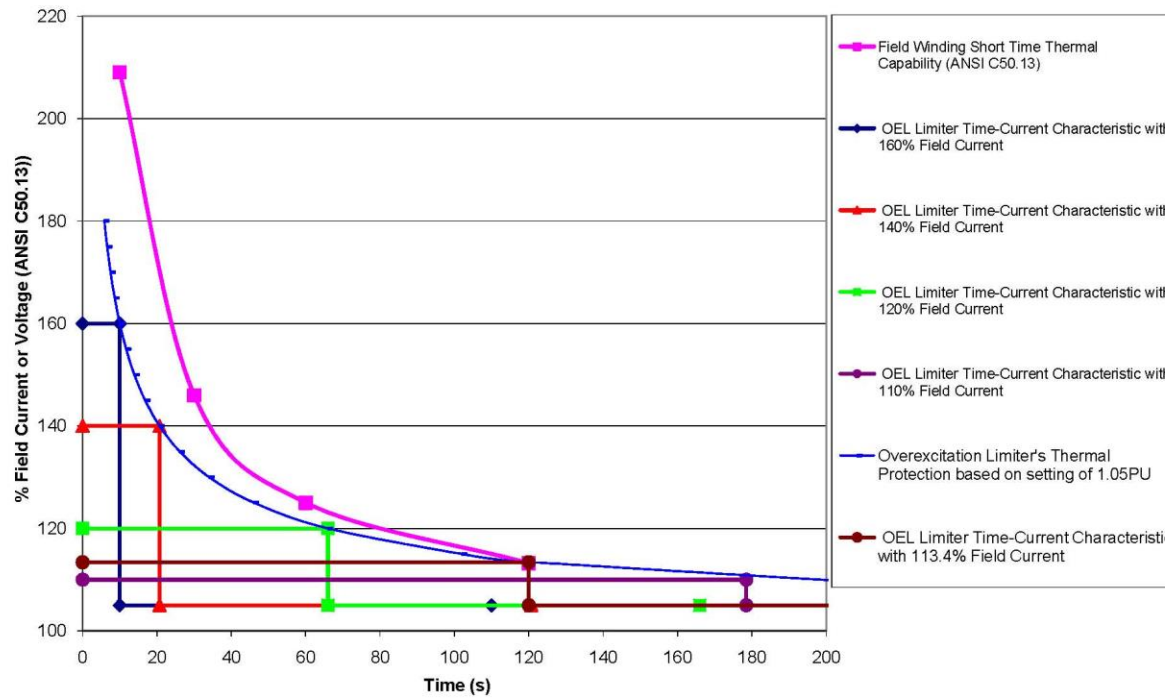
Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

Section G Attachment 2 – Example of Capabilities, Limiters, and Protection on an R-X Diagram at nominal voltage and frequency



Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

Section G Attachment 3 - Example of Capabilities, Limiters, and Protection on an Inverse Time Characteristic Plot



Standard PRC-019-2 — Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Facilities section 4.2.3.1

For those dispersed power producing facilities that only perform voltage regulating control at the individual generating unit level, the SDT believes that coordination should take place at the individual generating unit level of the dispersed power producing resource. These facilities need to consider the Protection Systems at the individual units and their compatibility with the reactive and voltage limitations of the units. Where voltage regulating control is done at an aggregate level, applicability is already included under Facilities section 4.2.3.

Appendix PRC-019-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-019-2 – Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.

2. **Number:** No specific provisions.

3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.

4. **Applicability:**

4.1. **Functional Entities**

No specific provisions.

4.2. **Facilities**

Only the following sections are modified:

4.2.1 Generating unit that is part of the Main Transmission System (RTP).

4.2.2 Synchronous compensator that is part of the Main Transmission System (RTP).

4.2.3 Generating station or Facility that is part of the Main Transmission System (RTP).

5. **Effective date:**

5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.3. Effective date of the standard and of this appendix in Québec: Month xx, 20xx

The implementation dates are those of PRC-019-1:

Requirements	Applicability to covered Facilities connected to the RTP	Applicability to covered Facilities not connected to the RTP	Implementation dates in Québec
R1 to R2	At least 40% of its Facilities covered	At least 15% of the Facilities covered	October 1, 2017
	At least 60% of its Facilities covered	At least 50% of the Facilities covered	October 1, 2018
	At least 80% of its Facilities covered	At least 75% of the Facilities covered	October 1, 2019
	100% of its Facilities covered	100% of the Facilities covered	October 1, 2020

Appendix PRC-019-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-019-2 – Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

B. Requirements

No specific provisions.

C. Measures

No specific provisions.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

In Québec, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means the Régie de l’énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

1.2. Evidence Retention

No specific provisions.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

The Régie de l’énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

2. Violation Severity Levels

No specific provisions.

E. Regional Variances

No specific provisions.

F. Associated Documents

No specific provisions.

G. Reference

No specific provisions.

Section G – Attachment 1

No specific provisions.

Section G – Attachment 2

No specific provisions.

Section G – Attachment 3

No specific provisions.

Appendix PRC-019-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-019-2 – Coordination of Generating Unit or Plant Capabilities, Voltage Regulating Controls, and Protection

Rationale

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** **Transmission Relay Loadability**
2. **Number:** PRC-023-4
3. **Purpose:** Protective relay settings shall not limit transmission loadability; not interfere with system operators' ability to take remedial action to protect system reliability and; be set to reliably detect all fault conditions and protect the electrical network from these faults.
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. **Functional Entity:**
 - 4.1.1 Transmission Owner with load-responsive phase protection systems as described in PRC-023-4 - Attachment A, applied at the terminals of the circuits defined in 4.2.1 (*Circuits Subject to Requirements R1 – R5*).
 - 4.1.2 Generator Owner with load-responsive phase protection systems as described in PRC-023-4 - Attachment A, applied at the terminals of the circuits defined in 4.2.1 (*Circuits Subject to Requirements R1 – R5*).
 - 4.1.3 Distribution Provider with load-responsive phase protection systems as described in PRC-023-4 - Attachment A, applied at the terminals of the circuits defined in 4.2.1 (*Circuits Subject to Requirements R1 – R5*), provided those circuits have bi-directional flow capabilities.
 - 4.1.4 Planning Coordinator
 - 4.2. **Circuits:**
 - 4.2.1 **Circuits Subject to Requirements R1 – R5:**
 - 4.2.1.1 Transmission lines operated at 200 kV and above, except Elements that connect the GSU transformer(s) to the Transmission system that are used exclusively to export energy directly from a BES generating unit or generating plant. Elements may also supply generating plant loads.
 - 4.2.1.2 Transmission lines operated at 100 kV to 200 kV selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6.
 - 4.2.1.3 Transmission lines operated below 100 kV that are part of the BES and selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6.
 - 4.2.1.4 Transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 200 kV and above.
 - 4.2.1.5 Transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 100 kV to 200 kV selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6.
 - 4.2.1.6 Transformers with low voltage terminals connected below 100 kV that are part of the BES and selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6.
 - 4.2.2 **Circuits Subject to Requirement R6:**
 - 4.2.2.1 Transmission lines operated at 100 kV to 200 kV and transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 100 kV to 200 kV, except Elements that connect the GSU transformer(s) to the Transmission system that are used exclusively to export energy directly from a BES generating unit or generating plant. Elements may also supply generating plant loads.

4.2.2.2 Transmission lines operated below 100 kV and transformers with low voltage terminals connected below 100 kV that are part of the BES, except Elements that connect the GSU transformer(s) to the Transmission system that are used exclusively to export energy directly from a BES generating unit or generating plant. Elements may also supply generating plant loads.

5. **Effective Dates:** See Implementation Plan for the Revised Definition of “Remedial Action Scheme”.

B. Requirements

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall use any one of the following criteria (Requirement R1, criteria 1 through 13) for any specific circuit terminal to prevent its phase protective relay settings from limiting transmission system loadability while maintaining reliable protection of the BES for all fault conditions. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall evaluate relay loadability at 0.85 per unit voltage and a power factor angle of 30 degrees. [*Violation Risk Factor: High*] [*Time Horizon: Long Term Planning*].

Criteria:

1. Set transmission line relays so they do not operate at or below 150% of the highest seasonal Facility Rating of a circuit, for the available defined loading duration nearest 4 hours (expressed in amperes).
2. Set transmission line relays so they do not operate at or below 115% of the highest seasonal 15-minute Facility Rating¹ of a circuit (expressed in amperes).
3. Set transmission line relays so they do not operate at or below 115% of the maximum theoretical power transfer capability (using a 90-degree angle between the sending-end and receiving-end voltages and either reactance or complex impedance) of the circuit (expressed in amperes) using one of the following to perform the power transfer calculation:
 - An infinite source (zero source impedance) with a 1.00 per unit bus voltage at each end of the line.
 - An impedance at each end of the line, which reflects the actual system source impedance with a 1.05 per unit voltage behind each source impedance.
4. Set transmission line relays on series compensated transmission lines so they do not operate at or below the maximum power transfer capability of the line, determined as the greater of:
 - 115% of the highest emergency rating of the series capacitor.
 - 115% of the maximum power transfer capability of the circuit (expressed in amperes), calculated in accordance with Requirement R1, criterion 3, using the full line inductive reactance.
5. Set transmission line relays on weak source systems so they do not operate at or below 170% of the maximum end-of-line three-phase fault magnitude (expressed in amperes).
6. Not used.

¹ When a 15-minute rating has been calculated and published for use in real-time operations, the 15-minute rating can be used to establish the loadability requirement for the protective relays.

7. Set transmission line relays applied at the load center terminal, remote from generation stations, so they do not operate at or below 115% of the maximum current flow from the load to the generation source under any system configuration.
8. Set transmission line relays applied on the bulk system-end of transmission lines that serve load remote to the system so they do not operate at or below 115% of the maximum current flow from the system to the load under any system configuration.
9. Set transmission line relays applied on the load-end of transmission lines that serve load remote to the bulk system so they do not operate at or below 115% of the maximum current flow from the load to the system under any system configuration.
10. Set transformer fault protection relays and transmission line relays on transmission lines terminated only with a transformer so that the relays do not operate at or below the greater of:
 - 150% of the applicable maximum transformer nameplate rating (expressed in amperes), including the forced cooled ratings corresponding to all installed supplemental cooling equipment.
 - 115% of the highest operator established emergency transformer rating.
- 10.1 Set load-responsive transformer fault protection relays, if used, such that the protection settings do not expose the transformer to a fault level and duration that exceeds the transformer's mechanical withstand capability².
11. For transformer overload protection relays that do not comply with the loadability component of Requirement R1, criterion 10 set the relays according to one of the following:
 - Set the relays to allow the transformer to be operated at an overload level of at least 150% of the maximum applicable nameplate rating, or 115% of the highest operator established emergency transformer rating, whichever is greater, for at least 15 minutes to provide time for the operator to take controlled action to relieve the overload.
 - Install supervision for the relays using either a top oil or simulated winding hot spot temperature element set no less than 100° C for the top oil temperature or no less than 140° C for the winding hot spot temperature³.
12. When the desired transmission line capability is limited by the requirement to adequately protect the transmission line, set the transmission line distance relays to a maximum of 125% of the apparent impedance (at the impedance angle of the transmission line) subject to the following constraints:
 - a. Set the maximum torque angle (MTA) to 90 degrees or the highest supported by the manufacturer.
 - b. Evaluate the relay loadability in amperes at the relay trip point at 0.85 per unit voltage and a power factor angle of 30 degrees.
 - c. Include a relay setting component of 87% of the current calculated in Requirement R1, criterion 12 in the Facility Rating determination for the circuit.

² As illustrated by the “dotted line” in IEEE C57.109-1993 - *IEEE Guide for Liquid-Immersed Transformer Through-Fault-Current Duration*, Clause 4.4, Figure 4.

³ IEEE standard C57.91, Tables 7 and 8, specify that transformers are to be designed to withstand a winding hot spot temperature of 180 degrees C, and Annex A cautions that bubble formation may occur above 140 degrees C.

13. Where other situations present practical limitations on circuit capability, set the phase protection relays so they do not operate at or below 115% of such limitations.
- R2.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall set its out-of-step blocking elements to allow tripping of phase protective relays for faults that occur during the loading conditions used to verify transmission line relay loadability per Requirement R1. *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Long Term Planning]*
- R3.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that uses a circuit capability with the practical limitations described in Requirement R1, criterion 7, 8, 9, 12, or 13 shall use the calculated circuit capability as the Facility Rating of the circuit and shall obtain the agreement of the Planning Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Reliability Coordinator with the calculated circuit capability. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long Term Planning]*
- R4.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that chooses to use Requirement R1 criterion 2 as the basis for verifying transmission line relay loadability shall provide its Planning Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Reliability Coordinator with an updated list of circuits associated with those transmission line relays at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between reports. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Long Term Planning]*
- R5.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider that sets transmission line relays according to Requirement R1 criterion 12 shall provide an updated list of the circuits associated with those relays to its Regional Entity at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between reports, to allow the ERO to compile a list of all circuits that have protective relay settings that limit circuit capability. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Long Term Planning]*
- R6.** Each Planning Coordinator shall conduct an assessment at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between assessments, by applying the criteria in PRC-023-4, Attachment B to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which Transmission Owners, Generator Owners, and Distribution Providers must comply with Requirements R1 through R5. The Planning Coordinator shall: *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Long Term Planning]*
- 6.1** Maintain a list of circuits subject to PRC-023-4 per application of Attachment B, including identification of the first calendar year in which any criterion in PRC-023-4, Attachment B applies.
- 6.2** Provide the list of circuits to all Regional Entities, Reliability Coordinators, Transmission Owners, Generator Owners, and Distribution Providers within its Planning Coordinator area within 30 calendar days of the establishment of the initial list and within 30 calendar days of any changes to that list.

C. Measures

- M1.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have evidence such as spreadsheets or summaries of calculations to show that each of its transmission relays is set according to one of the criteria in Requirement R1, criterion 1 through 13 and shall have evidence such as coordination curves or summaries of calculations that show that relays set per criterion 10 do not expose the transformer to fault levels and durations beyond those indicated in the standard. (R1)

- M2.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall have evidence such as spreadsheets or summaries of calculations to show that each of its out-of-step blocking elements is set to allow tripping of phase protective relays for faults that occur during the loading conditions used to verify transmission line relay loadability per Requirement R1. (R2)
- M3.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider with transmission relays set according to Requirement R1, criterion 7, 8, 9, 12, or 13 shall have evidence such as Facility Rating spreadsheets or Facility Rating database to show that it used the calculated circuit capability as the Facility Rating of the circuit and evidence such as dated correspondence that the resulting Facility Rating was agreed to by its associated Planning Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Reliability Coordinator. (R3)
- M4.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider that sets transmission line relays according to Requirement R1, criterion 2 shall have evidence such as dated correspondence to show that it provided its Planning Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Reliability Coordinator with an updated list of circuits associated with those transmission line relays within the required timeframe. The updated list may either be a full list, a list of incremental changes to the previous list, or a statement that there are no changes to the previous list. (R4)
- M5.** Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, or Distribution Provider that sets transmission line relays according to Requirement R1, criterion 12 shall have evidence such as dated correspondence that it provided an updated list of the circuits associated with those relays to its Regional Entity within the required timeframe. The updated list may either be a full list, a list of incremental changes to the previous list, or a statement that there are no changes to the previous list. (R5)
- M6.** Each Planning Coordinator shall have evidence such as power flow results, calculation summaries, or study reports that it used the criteria established within PRC-023-4, Attachment B to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard as described in Requirement R6. The Planning Coordinator shall have a dated list of such circuits and shall have evidence such as dated correspondence that it provided the list to the Regional Entities, Reliability Coordinators, Transmission Owners, Generator Owners, and Distribution Providers within its Planning Coordinator area within the required timeframe. (R6)

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Data Retention

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, Distribution Provider and Planning Coordinator shall keep data or evidence to show compliance as identified below unless directed by its Compliance Enforcement Authority to retain specific evidence for a longer period of time as part of an investigation:

The Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, and Distribution Provider shall each retain documentation to demonstrate compliance with Requirements R1 through R5 for three calendar years.

The Planning Coordinator shall retain documentation of the most recent review process required in Requirement R6. The Planning Coordinator shall retain the most recent list of circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard, as determined per Requirement R6.

If a Transmission Owner, Generator Owner, Distribution Provider, or Planning Coordinator is found non-compliant, it shall keep information related to the non-compliance until found compliant or for the time specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit record and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

- Compliance Audit
- Self-Certification
- Spot Checking
- Compliance Violation Investigation
- Self-Reporting
- Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None.

2. Violation Severity Levels:

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
R1	N/A	N/A	N/A	<p>The responsible entity did not use any one of the following criteria (Requirement R1 criterion 1 through 13) for any specific circuit terminal to prevent its phase protective relay settings from limiting transmission system loadability while maintaining reliable protection of the BES for all fault conditions.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The responsible entity did not evaluate relay loadability at 0.85 per unit voltage and a power factor angle of 30 degrees.</p>
R2	N/A	N/A	N/A	<p>The responsible entity failed to ensure that its out-of-step blocking elements allowed tripping of phase protective relays for faults that occur during the loading conditions used to verify transmission line relay loadability per Requirement R1.</p>
R3	N/A	N/A	N/A	<p>The responsible entity that uses a circuit capability with the practical limitations described in Requirement R1 criterion 7, 8, 9, 12, or 13 did not use the calculated circuit capability as the Facility Rating of the circuit.</p>

Standard PRC-023-4 — Transmission Relay Loadability

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
				<p>OR</p> <p>The responsible entity did not obtain the agreement of the Planning Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Reliability Coordinator with the calculated circuit capability.</p>
R4	N/A	N/A	N/A	<p>The responsible entity did not provide its Planning Coordinator, Transmission Operator, and Reliability Coordinator with an updated list of circuits that have transmission line relays set according to the criteria established in Requirement R1 criterion 2 at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between reports.</p>
R5	N/A	N/A	N/A	<p>The responsible entity did not provide its Regional Entity, with an updated list of circuits that have transmission line relays set according to the criteria established in Requirement R1 criterion 12 at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between reports.</p>
R6	N/A	<p>The Planning Coordinator used the criteria established within Attachment B to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard and met parts 6.1 and 6.2, but more</p>	<p>The Planning Coordinator used the criteria established within Attachment B to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard and met parts 6.1 and 6.2, but 24</p>	<p>The Planning Coordinator failed to use the criteria established within Attachment B to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard.</p>

Standard PRC-023-4 — Transmission Relay Loadability

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
		<p>than 15 months and less than 24 months lapsed between assessments.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Coordinator used the criteria established within Attachment B at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between assessments to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard and met 6.1 and 6.2 but failed to include the calendar year in which any criterion in Attachment B first applies.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Coordinator used the criteria established within Attachment B at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between assessments to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard and met 6.1 and 6.2 but provided the list of circuits to the Reliability Coordinators, Transmission Owners, Generator Owners, and Distribution Providers within its Planning Coordinator area between 31 days and 45 days after</p>	<p>months or more lapsed between assessments.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Coordinator used the criteria established within Attachment B at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between assessments to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard and met 6.1 and 6.2 but provided the list of circuits to the Reliability Coordinators, Transmission Owners, Generator Owners, and Distribution Providers within its Planning Coordinator area between 46 days and 60 days after list was established or updated. (part 6.2)</p>	<p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Coordinator used the criteria established within Attachment B, at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between assessments to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard but failed to meet parts 6.1 and 6.2.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Coordinator used the criteria established within Attachment B at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between assessments to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard but failed to maintain the list of circuits determined according to the process described in Requirement R6. (part 6.1)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Coordinator used the criteria established within Attachment B at least once each calendar year, with no more than 15 months between assessments to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard and met</p>

Standard PRC-023-4 — Transmission Relay Loadability

Requirement	Lower	Moderate	High	Severe
		<p>the list was established or updated. (part 6.2)</p>		<p>6.1 but failed to provide the list of circuits to the Reliability Coordinators, Transmission Owners, Generator Owners, and Distribution Providers within its Planning Coordinator area or provided the list more than 60 days after the list was established or updated. (part 6.2)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Planning Coordinator failed to determine the circuits in its Planning Coordinator area for which applicable entities must comply with the standard.</p>

E. Regional Differences

None.

F. Supplemental Technical Reference Document

1. The following document is an explanatory supplement to the standard. It provides the technical rationale underlying the requirements in this standard. The reference document contains methodology examples for illustration purposes it does not preclude other technically comparable methodologies.

“Determination and Application of Practical Relaying Loadability Ratings,” Version 1.0, June 2008, prepared by the System Protection and Control Task Force of the NERC Planning Committee, available at:

http://www.nerc.com/fileUploads/File/Standards/Relay_Loadability_Reference_Doc_Clean_Final_2008July3.pdf

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	February 12, 2008	Approved by Board of Trustees	New
1	March 19, 2008	Corrected typo in last sentence of Severe VSL for Requirement 3 — “then” should be “than.”	Errata
1	March 18, 2010	Approved by FERC	
1	Filed for approval April 19, 2010	Changed VRF for R3 from Medium to High; changed VSLs for R1, R2, R3 to binary Severe to comply with Order 733	Revision
2	March 10, 2011 approved by Board of Trustees	Revised to address initial set of directives from Order 733	Revision (Project 2010-13)
2	March 15, 2012	FERC order issued approving PRC-023-2 (approval becomes effective May 7, 2012)	
3	November 7, 2013	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	Supplemental SAR to Clarify applicability for consistency with PRC-025-1 and other minor corrections.

Standard PRC-023-4 — Transmission Relay Loadability

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
4	November 13, 2014	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Replaced references to Special Protection System and SPS with Remedial Action Scheme and RAS
4	November 19, 2015	FERC Order issued approving PRC-023-4. Docket No. RM15-13-000.	

PRC-023-4 — Attachment A

- 1.** This standard includes any protective functions which could trip with or without time delay, on load current, including but not limited to:
 - 1.1.** Phase distance.
 - 1.2.** Out-of-step tripping.
 - 1.3.** Switch-on-to-fault.
 - 1.4.** Overcurrent relays.
 - 1.5.** Communications aided protection schemes including but not limited to:
 - 1.5.1** Permissive overreach transfer trip (POTT).
 - 1.5.2** Permissive under-reach transfer trip (PUTT).
 - 1.5.3** Directional comparison blocking (DCB).
 - 1.5.4** Directional comparison unblocking (DCUB).
 - 1.6.** Phase overcurrent supervisory elements (i.e., phase fault detectors) associated with current-based, communication-assisted schemes (i.e., pilot wire, phase comparison, and line current differential) where the scheme is capable of tripping for loss of communications.
- 2.** The following protection systems are excluded from requirements of this standard:
 - 2.1.** Relay elements that are only enabled when other relays or associated systems fail. For example:
 - Overcurrent elements that are only enabled during loss of potential conditions.
 - Elements that are only enabled during a loss of communications except as noted in section 1.6.
 - 2.2.** Protection systems intended for the detection of ground fault conditions.
 - 2.3.** Protection systems intended for protection during stable power swings.
 - 2.4.** Not used.
 - 2.5.** Relay elements used only for Remedial Action Schemes applied and approved in accordance with NERC Reliability Standards PRC-012 through PRC-017 or their successors.
 - 2.6.** Protection systems that are designed only to respond in time periods which allow 15 minutes or greater to respond to overload conditions.
 - 2.7.** Thermal emulation relays which are used in conjunction with dynamic Facility Ratings.
 - 2.8.** Relay elements associated with dc lines.
 - 2.9.** Relay elements associated with dc converter transformers.

PRC-023-4 — Attachment B

Circuits to Evaluate

- Transmission lines operated at 100 kV to 200 kV and transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 100 kV to 200 kV.
- Transmission lines operated below 100 kV and transformers with low voltage terminals connected below 100 kV that are part of the Bulk Electric System.

Criteria

If any of the following criteria apply to a circuit, the applicable entity must comply with the standard for that circuit.

- B1.** The circuit is a monitored Facility of a permanent flowgate in the Eastern Interconnection, a major transfer path within the Western Interconnection as defined by the Regional Entity, or a comparable monitored Facility in the Québec Interconnection, that has been included to address reliability concerns for loading of that circuit, as confirmed by the applicable Planning Coordinator.
- B2.** The circuit is a monitored Facility of an Interconnection Reliability Operating Limit (IROL), where the IROL was determined in the planning horizon pursuant to FAC-010.
- B3.** The circuit forms a path (as agreed to by the Generator Operator and the transmission entity) to supply off-site power to a nuclear plant as established in the Nuclear Plant Interface Requirements (NPIRs) pursuant to NUC-001.
- B4.** The circuit is identified through the following sequence of power flow analyses⁴ performed by the Planning Coordinator for the one-to-five-year planning horizon:
- a. Simulate double contingency combinations selected by engineering judgment, without manual system adjustments in between the two contingencies (reflects a situation where a System Operator may not have time between the two contingencies to make appropriate system adjustments).
 - b. For circuits operated between 100 kV and 200 kV evaluate the post-contingency loading, in consultation with the Facility owner, against a threshold based on the Facility Rating assigned for that circuit and used in the power flow case by the Planning Coordinator.
 - c. When more than one Facility Rating for that circuit is available in the power flow case, the threshold for selection will be based on the Facility Rating for the loading duration nearest four hours.
 - d. The threshold for selection of the circuit will vary based on the loading duration assumed in the development of the Facility Rating.

⁴ Past analyses may be used to support the assessment if no material changes to the system have occurred since the last assessment

Standard PRC-023-4 — Transmission Relay Loadability

- i. If the Facility Rating is based on a loading duration of up to and including four hours, the circuit must comply with the standard if the loading exceeds 115% of the Facility Rating.
 - ii. If the Facility Rating is based on a loading duration greater than four and up to and including eight hours, the circuit must comply with the standard if the loading exceeds 120% of the Facility Rating.
 - iii. If the Facility Rating is based on a loading duration of greater than eight hours, the circuit must comply with the standard if the loading exceeds 130% of the Facility Rating.
- e. Radially operated circuits serving only load are excluded.
- B5.** The circuit is selected by the Planning Coordinator based on technical studies or assessments, other than those specified in criteria B1 through B4, in consultation with the Facility owner.
- B6.** The circuit is mutually agreed upon for inclusion by the Planning Coordinator and the Facility owner.

Appendix PRC-023-4-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-023-4 – Transmission Relay Loadability

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.
4. **Applicability:**

4.1. Functional Entity

No specific provisions.

4.2. Circuits:

4.2.1 Circuits Subject to Requirements R1 to R5

4.2.1.1 Transmission lines operated at 200 kV and above that are part of the Main Transmission System (RTP), except Elements that connect the GSU transformers to the Transmission system that are used exclusively to export energy directly from a generating unit or generating plant of the RTP. Elements may also supply generating plant loads.

4.2.1.2 Transmission lines operated at 100 kV to 200 kV that are part of the RTP and selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6.

4.2.1.3 Transmission lines operated below 100 kV that are part of the RTP and selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6.

4.2.1.4 Transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 200 kV and above that are part of the RTP.

4.2.1.5 Transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 100 kV to 200 kV that are part of the RTP and selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6.

4.2.1.6 Transformers with low voltage terminals connected below 100 kV that are part of the RTP and selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6.

4.2.2 Circuits Subject to Requirement R6

4.2.2.1 Transmission lines operated at 100 kV to 200 kV that are part of the RTP and transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 100 kV to 200 kV that are part of the RTP, except Elements that connect the GSU transformers to the Transmission system that are used

Appendix PRC-023-4-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-023-4 – Transmission Relay Loadability

exclusively to export energy directly from an RTP generating unit or generating plant. Elements may also supply generating plant loads.

4.2.2.2 Transmission lines operated below 100 kV and transformers with low voltage terminals connected below 100 kV that are part of the RTP, except Elements that connect the GSU transformers to the Transmission system that are used exclusively to export energy directly from an RTP generating unit or generating plant. Elements may also supply generating plant loads.

5. Effective date:

5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx

5.3. Effective date of the standard and of this appendix in Québec: Month xx, 20xx

The implementation dates are those of PRC-023-3:

Requirements	Applicability	Date of implementation in Québec
R1	Each TO, GO or DP with transmission lines operated at 200 kV and above and transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 200 kV and above, with the exception of the following:	January 1 st , 2018
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Requirement R1, Criterion 10.1 	April 1 st , 2018
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For the supervisory elements described in PRC-023-4 – Attachment A, Section 1.6 	October 1 st , 2018
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For the trip-on-fault devices described in PRC-023-4 – Attachment A, Section 1.3 	October 1 st , 2019
	Each TO, GO or DP with circuits identified by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6	The later of the following dates: First day of the first calendar quarter 39 months following

Appendix PRC-023-4-QC-1

**Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard
PRC-023-4 – Transmission Relay Loadability**

Requirements	Applicability	Date of implementation in Québec
		<p>notification by the Planning Coordinator of a circuit's inclusion on a list of circuits subject to PRC-023-4, per the provisions of Attachment B</p> <p>OR</p> <p>First day of the first calendar year during which a criterion from Attachment B applies, unless the Planning Coordinator removes the circuit from the list of circuits selected prior to the applicable effective date.</p>
R2 and R3	Each TO, GO or DP with transmission lines operated at 200 kV and above and transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 200 kV or above	January 1 st , 2018
	Each TO, GO or DP with circuits selected by the Planning Coordinator in accordance with Requirement R6	<p>The later of the following dates:</p> <p>First day of the first calendar quarter 39 months following notification by the Planning Coordinator of a circuit's inclusion on a list of circuits subject to PRC-023-4, per the provisions of Attachment B</p> <p>OR</p> <p>First day of the first calendar year during which a criterion from Attachment B applies, unless the Planning Coordinator removes the circuit from the list of circuits selected prior to the applicable effective date.</p>
R4	Each TO, GO or DP that chooses criterion 2 of Requirement R1 as the basis for verifying transmission line relay loadability	April 1 st , 2018
R5	Each TO, GO or DP that sets transmission line relays in accordance with Requirement R1 criterion 12	April 1 st , 2018

Appendix PRC-023-4-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-023-4 – Transmission Relay Loadability

Requirements	Applicability	Date of implementation in Québec
R6	Each Planning Coordinator who must conduct an assessment by using Attachment B criteria to identify the circuits in its Planning Coordinator Area that require Transmission Owners, Generator Owners and Distribution Providers to comply with Requirements R1 through R5	July 1 st , 2018

B. Requirements

R1. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner and Distribution Provider shall use one of the following criteria (Requirement R1, criteria 1 through 13) for any specific circuit terminal to prevent the phase protective relay settings from limiting transmission system loadability while maintaining reliable protection of the RTP for all fault conditions. Each Transmission Owner, Generator Owner and Distribution Provider shall evaluate relay loadability at 0.85 per unit voltage and a power factor angle of 30 degrees. *[Violation Risk Factor: High] [Time Horizon: Long Term Planning]*.

Specific provision applicable to criteria 10 and 11

10. Set transformer fault protection relays and transmission line relays on transmission lines terminated only with a transformer so that the relays do not operate at or below the greater of:

- No specific provisions.
- One of the following applicable values:
 - 115% of the highest operator established emergency transformer rating, if the operator has established one, or
 - 100% of the highest long duration emergency rating established by the Transformer Owner, if the Transformer Owner has established one and the operator has not established a highest transformer emergency rating.

10.1 No specific provisions.

11. For transformer overload protection relays that do not comply with the loadability component of Requirement R1 criterion 10, set the relays according to one of the following:

- Set the relays to allow the transformer to be operated at an overload level as defined in criterion 10 for at least 15 minutes to provide time for the operator to take controlled action to relieve the overload.
- No specific provisions.

C. Measures

No specific provisions.

D. Compliance

Appendix PRC-023-4-QC-1

**Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard
PRC-023-4 – Transmission Relay Loadability**

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

In Québec, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means the Régie de l’énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

1.2. Data Retention

No specific provisions.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

The Régie de l’énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

2. Violation Severity Levels

	Low	Moderate	High	Severe
R1	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	The responsible entity did not use any of the following criteria (Requirement R1 criteria 1 through 13) for any specific circuit terminal to prevent the phase protective relay settings from limiting transmission system loadability while maintaining reliable protection of the RTP for all fault conditions. OR The responsible entity did not evaluate relay loadability at 0.85 per unit voltage and a power factor angle of 30 degrees.
R2	No specific provisions			
R3	No specific provisions			
R4	No specific provisions			
R5	No specific provisions			
R6	No specific provisions			

E. Regional Differences

No specific provisions.

F. Supplemental Technical Reference Document

No specific provisions.

Appendix PRC-023-4-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-023-4 – Transmission Relay Loadability

PRC-023-4 – Attachment A

No specific provisions.

PRC-023-4 – Attachment B

Circuits to Evaluate

- Transmission lines operated at 100 kV to 200 kV and transformers with low voltage terminals connected at 100 kV to 200 kV that are part of the RTP.
- Transmission lines operated below 100 kV and transformers with low voltage terminals connected below 100 kV that are part of the RTP.

Criteria

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings
2. **Number:** PRC-024-2
3. **Purpose:** Ensure Generator Owners set their generator protective relays such that generating units remain connected during defined frequency and voltage excursions.
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. Generator Owner
5. **Effective Date:**

See the Implementation Plan for PRC-024-2.

B. Requirements

- R1.** Each Generator Owner that has generator frequency protective relaying¹ activated to trip its applicable generating unit(s) shall set its protective relaying such that the generator frequency protective relaying does not trip the applicable generating unit(s) within the “no trip zone” of PRC-024 Attachment 1, subject to the following exceptions:² [*Violation Risk Factor: Medium*] [*Time Horizon: Long-term Planning*]
- Generating unit(s) may trip if the protective functions (such as out-of-step functions or loss-of-field functions) operate due to an impending or actual loss of synchronism or, for asynchronous generating units, due to instability in power conversion control equipment.
 - Generating unit(s) may trip if clearing a system fault necessitates disconnecting (a) generating unit(s).
 - Generating unit(s) may trip within a portion of the “no trip zone” of PRC-024 Attachment 1 for documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitations in accordance with Requirement R3.
- R2.** Each Generator Owner that has generator voltage protective relaying¹ activated to trip its applicable generating unit(s) shall set its protective relaying such that the generator voltage protective relaying does not trip the applicable generating unit(s) as a result of a

¹ Each Generator Owner is not required to have frequency or voltage protective relaying (including but not limited to frequency and voltage protective functions for discrete relays, volts per hertz relays evaluated at nominal frequency, multi-function protective devices or protective functions within control systems that directly trip or provide tripping signals to the generator based on frequency or voltage inputs) installed or activated on its unit.

² For frequency protective relays associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies to frequency protective relays applied on the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources, as well as frequency protective relays applied on equipment from the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resource up to the point of interconnection.

voltage excursion (at the point of interconnection³) caused by an event on the transmission system external to the generating plant that remains within the “no trip zone” of PRC-024 Attachment 2.⁴ If the Transmission Planner allows less stringent voltage relay settings than those required to meet PRC-024 Attachment 2, then the Generator Owner shall set its protective relaying within the voltage recovery characteristics of a location-specific Transmission Planner’s study. Requirement R2 is subject to the following exceptions: *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

- Generating unit(s) may trip in accordance with a Special Protection System (SPS) or Remedial Action Scheme (RAS).
- Generating unit(s) may trip if clearing a system fault necessitates disconnecting (a) generating unit(s).
- Generating unit(s) may trip by action of protective functions (such as out-of-step functions or loss-of-field functions) that operate due to an impending or actual loss of synchronism or, for asynchronous generating units, due to instability in power conversion control equipment.
- Generating unit(s) may trip within a portion of the “no trip zone” of PRC-024 Attachment 2 for documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitations in accordance with Requirement R3.

R3. Each Generator Owner shall document each known regulatory or equipment limitation⁵ that prevents an applicable generating unit with generator frequency or voltage protective relays from meeting the relay setting criteria in Requirements R1 or R2 including (but not limited to) study results, experience from an actual event, or manufacturer’s advice. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Long-term Planning]*

3.1. The Generator Owner shall communicate the documented regulatory or equipment limitation, or the removal of a previously documented regulatory or equipment limitation, to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner within 30 calendar days of any of the following:

- Identification of a regulatory or equipment limitation.
- Repair of the equipment causing the limitation that removes the limitation.
- Replacement of the equipment causing the limitation with equipment that removes the limitation.

³ For the purposes of this standard, point of interconnection means the transmission (high voltage) side of the generator step-up or collector transformer.

⁴ For voltage protective relays associated with dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies to voltage protective relays applied on the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resources, as well as voltage protective relays applied on equipment from the individual generating unit of the dispersed power producing resource up to the point of interconnection.

⁵ Excludes limitations that are caused by the setting capability of the generator frequency and voltage protective relays themselves but does not exclude limitations originating in the equipment that they protect.

- Creation or adjustment of an equipment limitation caused by consumption of the cumulative turbine life-time frequency excursion allowance.
- R4.** Each Generator Owner shall provide its applicable generator protection trip settings associated with Requirements R1 and R2 to the Planning Coordinator or Transmission Planner that models the associated unit within 60 calendar days of receipt of a written request for the data and within 60 calendar days of any change to those previously requested trip settings unless directed by the requesting Planning Coordinator or Transmission Planner that the reporting of relay setting changes is not required.
[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Operations Planning]

C. Measures

- M1.** Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that generator frequency protective relays have been set in accordance with Requirement R1 such as dated setting sheets, calibration sheets or other documentation.
- M2.** Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that generator voltage protective relays have been set in accordance with Requirement R2 such as dated setting sheets, voltage-time curves, calibration sheets, coordination plots, dynamic simulation studies or other documentation.
- M3.** Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that it has documented and communicated any known regulatory or equipment limitations (excluding limitations noted in footnote 3) that resulted in an exception to Requirements R1 or R2 in accordance with Requirement R3 such as a dated email or letter that contains such documentation as study results, experience from an actual event, or manufacturer's advice.

Each Generator Owner shall have evidence that it communicated applicable generator protective relay trip settings in accordance with Requirement R4, such as dated e-mails, correspondence or other evidence and copies of any requests it has received for that information.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

The Regional Entity shall serve as the Compliance Enforcement Authority (CEA) unless the applicable entity is owned, operated, or controlled by the Regional Entity. In such cases, the ERO or a Regional Entity approved by FERC or other applicable governmental authority shall serve as the CEA.

1.2. Data Retention

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner shall retain evidence of compliance with Requirement R1 through R4; for 3 years or until the next audit, whichever is longer.

If a Generator Owner is found non-compliant, the Generator Owner shall keep information related to the non-compliance until mitigation is complete and approved for the time period specified above, whichever is longer.

The Compliance Enforcement Authority shall keep the last audit records and all requested and submitted subsequent audit records.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

Compliance Audit

Self-Certification

Spot Checking

Compliance Investigation

Self-Reporting

Complaint

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

None

2. Violation Severity Levels

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner that has frequency protection activated to trip a generating unit, failed to set its generator frequency protective relaying so that it does not trip within the criteria listed in Requirement R1 unless there is a documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitation per Requirement R3.
R2	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner with voltage protective relaying activated to trip a generating unit, failed to set its voltage protective relaying so that it does not trip as a result of a voltage excursion at the point of interconnection, caused by an event external to the plant per the criteria specified in Requirement R2 unless there is a documented and communicated regulatory or equipment limitation per Requirement R3.
R3	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 30 calendar days but less than or equal to 60 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner documented the known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2 and communicated the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of identifying the limitation.	The Generator Owner failed to document any known non-protection system equipment limitation that prevented it from meeting the criteria in Requirement R1 or R2. OR The Generator Owner failed to communicate the documented limitation to its Planning Coordinator and Transmission Planner within 120 calendar days of identifying the limitation.

Standard PRC-024-2 — Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings

R #	Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	<p>The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of any change to those trip settings.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 60 calendar days but less than or equal to 90 calendar days of a written request.</p>	<p>The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of any change to those trip settings.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 90 calendar days but less than or equal to 120 calendar days of a written request.</p>	<p>The Generator Owner provided its generator protection trip settings more than 120 calendar days but less than or equal to 150 calendar days of any change to those trip settings.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Generator Owner provided trip settings more than 120 calendar days but less than or equal to 150 calendar days of a written request.</p>	<p>The Generator Owner failed to provide its generator protection trip settings within 150 calendar days of any change to those trip settings.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Generator Owner failed to provide trip settings within 150 calendar days of a written request.</p>

E. Regional Variances

None

F. Associated Documents

None

Version History

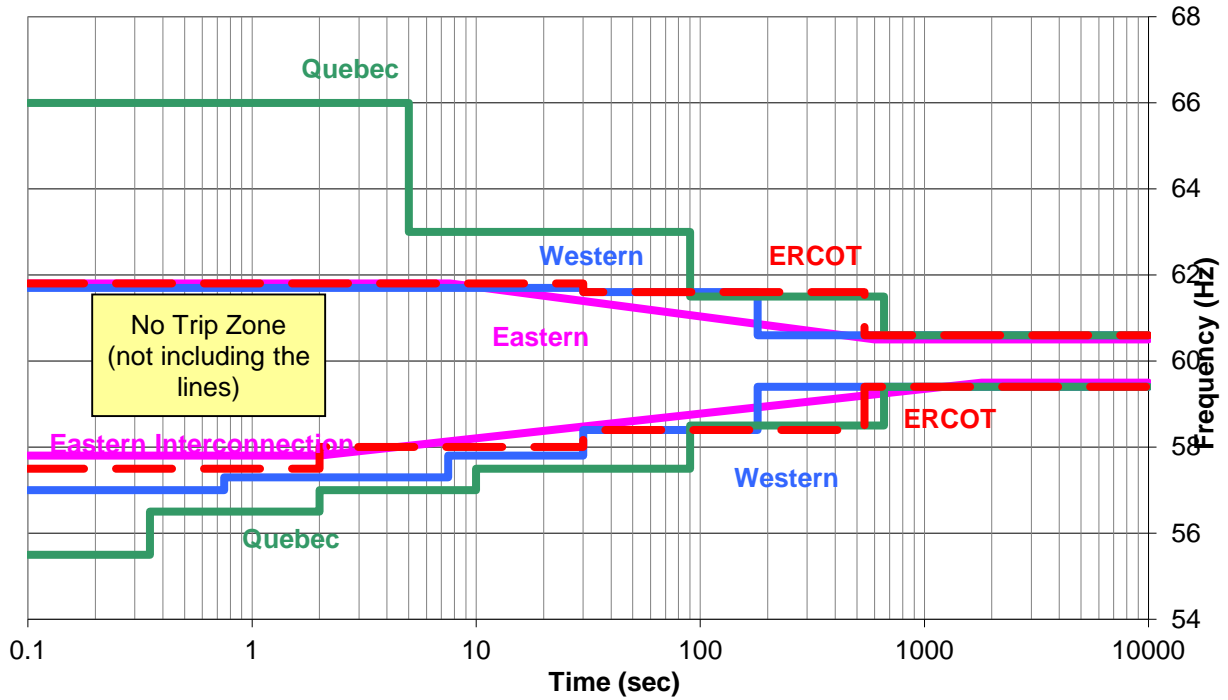
Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	May 9, 2013	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	
1	March 20, 2014	FERC Order issued approving PRC-024-1. (Order becomes effective on 7/1/16.)	
2	February 12, 2015	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Standard revised in Project 2014-01: Applicability revised to clarify application of requirements to BES dispersed power producing resources
2	May 29, 2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving PRC-024-2	Modifications to adjust the applicability to owners of dispersed generation resources.

G. References

1. “The Technical Justification for the New WECC Voltage Ride-Through (VRT) Standard, A White Paper Developed by the Wind Generation Task Force (WGTF),” dated June 13, 2007, a guideline approved by WECC Technical Studies Subcommittee.

PRC-024 — Attachment 1

OFF NOMINAL FREQUENCY CAPABILITY CURVE



Curve Data Points:

Eastern Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (sec)
≥61.8	Instantaneous trip	≤57.8	Instantaneous trip
≥60.5	$10^{(90.935-1.45713*f)}$	≤59.5	$10^{(1.7373*f-100.116)}$
<60.5	Continuous operation	> 59.5	Continuous operation

Standard PRC-024-2 — Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings

Western Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (sec)
≥61.7	Instantaneous trip	≤57.0	Instantaneous trip
≥61.6	30	≤57.3	0.75
≥60.6	180	≤57.8	7.5
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤58.4	30
		≤59.4	180
		>59.4	Continuous operation

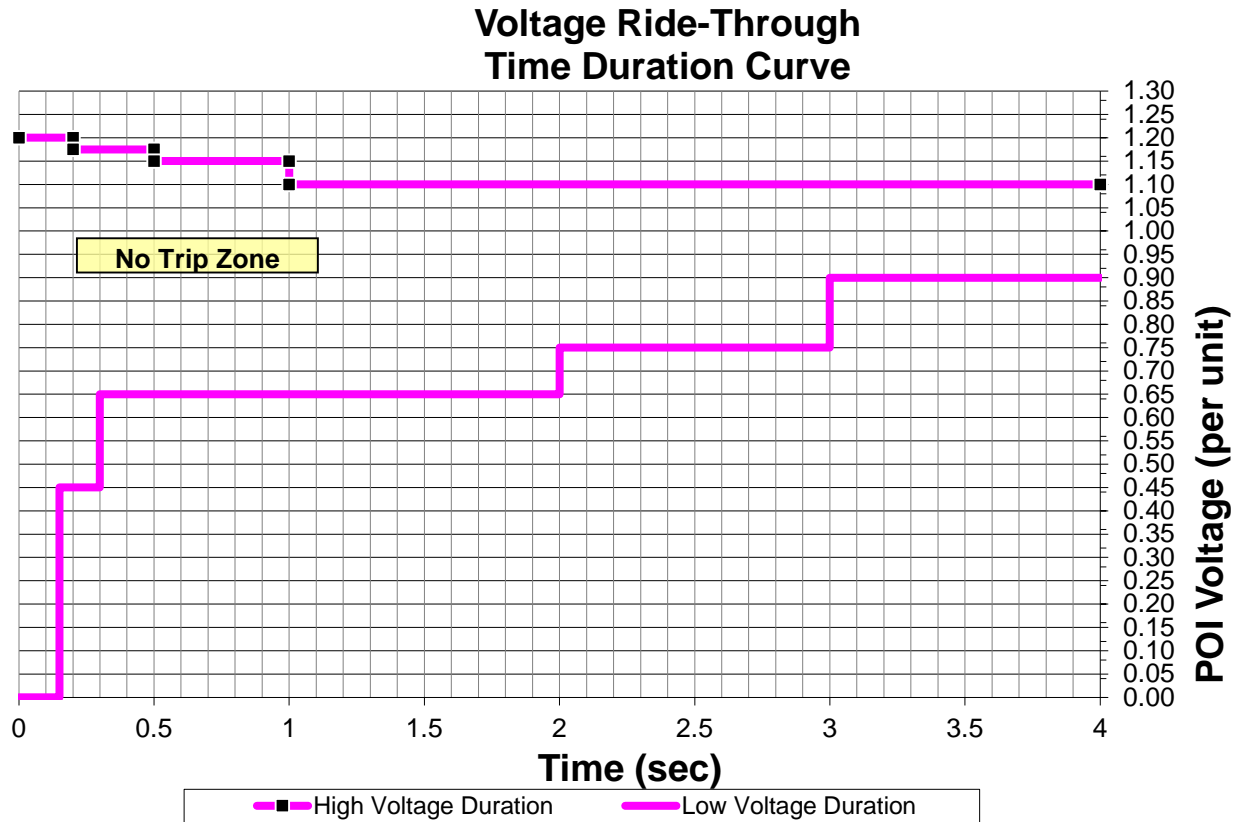
Quebec Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)
>66.0	Instantaneous trip	<55.5	Instantaneous trip
≥63.0	5	≤56.5	0.35
≥61.5	90	≤57.0	2
≥60.6	660	≤57.5	10
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤58.5	90
		≤59.4	660
		>59.4	Continuous operation

ERCOT Interconnection

High Frequency Duration		Low Frequency Duration	
Frequency (Hz)	Time (Sec)	Frequency (Hz)	Time (sec)
≥61.8	Instantaneous trip	≤57.5	Instantaneous trip
≥61.6	30	≤58.0	2
≥60.6	540	≤58.4	30
<60.6	Continuous operation	≤59.4	540
		>59.4	Continuous operation

PRC-024— Attachment 2



Ride Through Duration:

High Voltage Ride Through Duration		Low Voltage Ride Through Duration	
Voltage (pu)	Time (sec)	Voltage (pu)	Time (sec)
≥1.200	Instantaneous trip	<0.45	0.15
≥1.175	0.20	<0.65	0.30
≥1.15	0.50	<0.75	2.00
≥1.10	1.00	<0.90	3.00

Voltage Ride-Through Curve Clarifications

Curve Details:

1. The per unit voltage base for these curves is the nominal operating voltage specified by the Transmission Planner in the analysis of the reliability of the Interconnected Transmission Systems at the point of interconnection to the Bulk Electric System (BES).
2. The curves depicted were derived based on three-phase transmission system zone 1 faults with Normal Clearing not exceeding 9 cycles. The curves apply to voltage excursions regardless of the type of initiating event.
3. The envelope within the curves represents the cumulative voltage duration at the point of interconnection with the BES. For example, if the voltage first exceeds 1.15 pu at 0.3 seconds after a fault, does not exceed 1.2 pu voltage, and returns below 1.15 pu at 0.4 seconds, then the cumulative time the voltage is above 1.15 pu voltage is 0.1 seconds and is within the no trip zone of the curve.
4. The curves depicted assume system frequency is 60 Hertz. When evaluating Volts/Hertz protection, you may adjust the magnitude of the high voltage curve in proportion to deviations of frequency below 60 Hz.
5. Voltages in the curve assume minimum fundamental frequency phase-to-ground or phase-to-phase voltage for the low voltage duration curve and the greater of maximum RMS or crest phase-to-phase voltage for the high voltage duration curve.

Evaluating Protective Relay Settings:

1. Use either the following assumptions or loading conditions that are believed to be the most probable for the unit under study to evaluate voltage protection relay setting calculations on the static case for steady state initial conditions:
 - a. All of the units connected to the same transformer are online and operating.
 - b. All of the units are at full nameplate real-power output.
 - c. Power factor is 0.95 lagging (i.e. supplying reactive power to the system) as measured at the generator terminals.
 - d. The automatic voltage regulator is in automatic voltage control mode.
2. Evaluate voltage protection relay settings assuming that additional installed generating plant reactive support equipment (such as static VAr compensators, synchronous condensers, or capacitors) is available and operating normally.
3. Evaluate voltage protection relay settings accounting for the actual tap settings of transformers between the generator terminals and the point of interconnection.

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for Footnotes 2 and 4

The SDT has determined it is appropriate to require that protective relay settings applied on both the individual generating units and aggregating equipment (including any non-Bulk Electric System collection system equipment) are set respecting the “no-trip zone” referenced in the requirements to maintain reliability of the BES. If any of the protective relay settings applied on these elements of the facility were to be excluded from this standard, the potential would exist for portions of or the entire generating capacity of the dispersed power producing facility to be lost during a voltage or frequency excursion.

Appendix PRC-024-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-024-2 – Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.
4. **Applicability:**

The Facilities subject to this Standard are the Facilities of the Main Transmission System (RTP).

5. **Effective date:**

- 5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx
- 5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: Month xx, 20xx
- 5.3. Effective date of the standard and of this appendix in Québec: Month xx, 20xx
The requirements will be implemented on the following dates:

Requirements	Applicability	Implementation date in Québec
R1 to R4	At least 40% of its Facilities covered	15 months after the effective date of the standard
	At least 60% of its Facilities covered	27 months after the effective date of the standard
	At least 80% of its Facilities covered	39 months after the effective date of the standard
	100% of its Facilities covered	51 months after the effective date of the standard

B. Requirements

Specific provision regarding Requirement R1:

Wind, thermal and photovoltaic generating stations, as well as stations equipped with asynchronous generators, shall adhere to the curves in Appendix 1, as specified by Requirement R1, except that they may be tripped at a frequency of ≥ 61.7 Hz.

Specific provisions regarding Requirement R2:

Replace PRC-024 Attachment 2 with QC-PRC-024-2 Appendix 2.

Appendix PRC-024-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-024-2 – Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings

Replace the first exception to Requirement R2 with the following: “A generating unit may be tripped in accordance with a Remedial Action Scheme (RAS).”

C. Measures

No specific provisions.

D. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority

In Québec, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” means the Régie de l’énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

1.2. Data Retention

No specific provisions.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

The Régie de l’énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

2. Violation Severity Levels

No specific provisions.

E. Regional Variances

No specific provisions.

F. Associated Documents

No specific provisions.

G. References

No specific provisions.

PRC-024 — Attachment 1

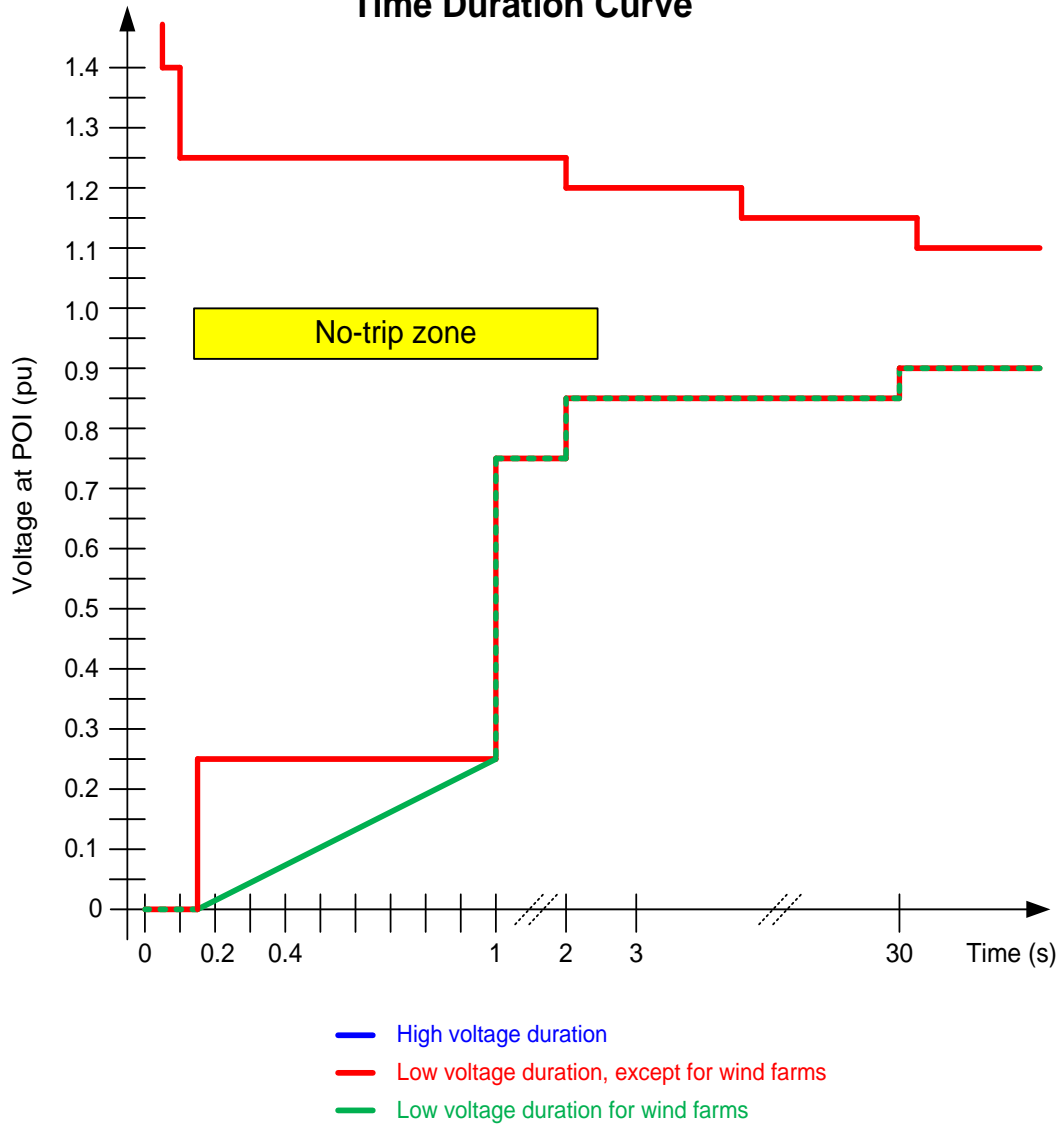
No specific provisions.

PRC-024-2 — Attachment 2

Replace the curve and table with the following:

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard
PRC-024-2 – Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings

Voltage Ride-Through
Time Duration Curve



Appendix PRC-024-2-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard PRC-024-2 – Generator Frequency and Voltage Protective Relay Settings

Ride-Through Duration

High Voltage Ride-Through Duration		Low Voltage Ride-Through Duration	
Voltage (pu)	Time (sec)	Voltage (pu)	Time (sec)
>1.4	0.033	$0.9 \leq V \leq 1.10$	permanent
$1.25 < V \leq 1.40$ (Note 1)	0.10	$0.85 \leq V < 0.9$	30
$1.20 < V \leq 1.25$	2.0	$0.75 \leq V < 0.85$	2.0
$1.15 < V \leq 1.20$	30.0	$0.25 \leq V < 0.75$	1.0
$1.10 < V \leq 1.15$	300	$0 \leq V < 0.25$ (Note 2)	0.15

Note 1. Temporary blocking is allowed, after a 0.022 sec delay, when the positive-sequence voltage exceeds 1.25 pu. However, normal operation must resume once the voltage drops back below the 1.25 pu threshold.

Note 2. For voltage levels between 0 and 0.25 pu, wind farms must observe the minimum duration calculated with the formula $D = 3.4 V + 0.15$, where D is minimum duration and V is voltage in pu.

Rationale

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules
2. **Number:** VAR-002-4.1
3. **Purpose:** To ensure generators provide reactive support and voltage control, within generating Facility capabilities, in order to protect equipment and maintain reliable operation of the Interconnection.
4. **Applicability:**
 - 4.1. Generator Operator
 - 4.2. Generator Owner
5. **Effective Dates**

See Implementation Plan.

B. Requirements and Measures

- R1.** The Generator Operator shall operate each generator connected to the interconnected transmission system in the automatic voltage control mode (with its automatic voltage regulator (AVR) in service and controlling voltage) or in a different control mode as instructed by the Transmission Operator unless: 1) the generator is exempted by the Transmission Operator, or 2) the Generator Operator has notified the Transmission Operator of one of the following:
[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]
- That the generator is being operated in start-up,¹ shutdown,² or testing mode pursuant to a Real-time communication or a procedure that was previously provided to the Transmission Operator; or
 - That the generator is not being operated in automatic voltage control mode or in the control mode that was instructed by the Transmission Operator for a reason other than start-up, shutdown, or testing.
- M1.** The Generator Operator shall have evidence to show that it notified its associated Transmission Operator any time it failed to operate a generator in the automatic voltage control mode or in a different control mode as specified in Requirement R1. If a generator is being started up or shut down with the automatic voltage control off, or is being tested, and no notification of the AVR status is made to the Transmission Operator, the Generator Operator will have evidence that it notified the Transmission Operator of its procedure for placing the unit into automatic voltage control mode as required in Requirement R1. Such evidence may include, but is not limited to, dated evidence of transmittal of the procedure such as an electronic message or a transmittal letter with the procedure included or attached. If a generator is exempted, the Generator Operator shall also have evidence that the generator is exempted from being in automatic voltage control mode (with its AVR in service and controlling voltage).

¹ Start-up is deemed to have ended when the generator is ramped up to its minimum continuously sustainable load and the generator is prepared for continuous operation.

² Shutdown is deemed to begin when the generator is ramped down to its minimum continuously sustainable load and the generator is prepared to go offline.

- R2.** Unless exempted by the Transmission Operator, each Generator Operator shall maintain the generator voltage or Reactive Power schedule³ (within each generating Facility's capabilities⁴) provided by the Transmission Operator, or otherwise shall meet the conditions of notification for deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*
- 2.1.** When a generator's AVR is out of service or the generator does not have an AVR, the Generator Operator shall use an alternative method to control the generator reactive output to meet the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.
- 2.2.** When instructed to modify voltage, the Generator Operator shall comply or provide an explanation of why the schedule cannot be met.
- 2.3.** Generator Operators that do not monitor the voltage at the location specified in their voltage schedule shall have a methodology for converting the scheduled voltage specified by the Transmission Operator to the voltage point being monitored by the Generator Operator.
- M2.** In order to identify when a generator is deviating from its schedule, the Generator Operator will monitor voltage based on existing equipment at its Facility. The Generator Operator shall have evidence to show that the generator maintained the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator, or shall have evidence of meeting the conditions of notification for deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.
- Evidence may include, but is not limited to, operator logs, SCADA data, phone logs, and any other notifications that would alert the Transmission Operator or otherwise demonstrate that the Generator Operator complied with the Transmission Operator's instructions for addressing deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule.
- For Part 2.1, when a generator's AVR is out of service or the generator does not have an AVR, a Generator Operator shall have evidence to show an alternative method was used to control the generator reactive output to meet the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.
- For Part 2.2, the Generator Operator shall have evidence that it complied with the Transmission Operator's instructions to modify its voltage or provided an explanation to the Transmission Operator of why the Generator Operator was unable to comply with the instruction. Evidence may include, but is not limited to, operator logs, SCADA data, and phone logs.
- For Part 2.3, for Generator Operators that do not monitor the voltage at the location specified on the voltage schedule, the Generator Operator shall demonstrate the methodology for converting the scheduled voltage specified by the Transmission Operator to the voltage point being monitored by the Generator Operator.

³ The voltage or Reactive Power schedule is a target value with a tolerance band or a voltage or Reactive Power range communicated by the Transmission Operator to the Generator Operator.

⁴ Generating Facility capability may be established by test or other means, and may not be sufficient at times to pull the system voltage within the schedule tolerance band. Also, when a generator is operating in manual control, Reactive Power capability may change based on stability considerations.

- R3.** Each Generator Operator shall notify its associated Transmission Operator of a status change on the AVR, power system stabilizer, or alternative voltage controlling device within 30 minutes of the change. If the status has been restored within 30 minutes of such change, then the Generator Operator is not required to notify the Transmission Operator of the status change. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*
- M3.** The Generator Operator shall have evidence it notified its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of any status change identified in Requirement R3. If the status has been restored within the first 30 minutes, no notification is necessary.
- R4.** Each Generator Operator shall notify its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of becoming aware of a change in reactive capability due to factors other than a status change described in Requirement R3. If the capability has been restored within 30 minutes of the Generator Operator becoming aware of such change, then the Generator Operator is not required to notify the Transmission Operator of the change in reactive capability. *[Violation Risk Factor: Medium] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*
- Reporting of status or capability changes as stated in Requirement R4 is not applicable to the individual generating units of dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition.
- M4.** The Generator Operator shall have evidence it notified its associated Transmission Operator within 30 minutes of becoming aware of a change in reactive capability in accordance with Requirement R4. If the capability has been restored within the first 30 minutes, no notification is necessary.
- R5.** The Generator Owner shall provide the following to its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner within 30 calendar days of a request. *[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]*
- 5.1.** For generator step-up and auxiliary transformers⁵ with primary voltages equal to or greater than the generator terminal voltage:
- 5.1.1.** Tap settings.
 - 5.1.2.** Available fixed tap ranges.
 - 5.1.3.** Impedance data.
- M5.** The Generator Owner shall have evidence it provided its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner with information on its step-up and auxiliary transformers as required in Requirement R5, Part 5.1.1 through Part 5.1.3 within 30 calendar days.

⁵ For dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition, this requirement applies only to those transformers that have at least one winding at a voltage of 100 kV or above.

- R6.** After consultation with the Transmission Operator regarding necessary step-up transformer tap changes, the Generator Owner shall ensure that transformer tap positions are changed according to the specifications provided by the Transmission Operator, unless such action would violate safety, an equipment rating, a regulatory requirement, or a statutory requirement.
[Violation Risk Factor: Lower] [Time Horizon: Real-time Operations]
- 6.1.** If the Generator Owner cannot comply with the Transmission Operator’s specifications, the Generator Owner shall notify the Transmission Operator and shall provide the technical justification.
- M6.** The Generator Owner shall have evidence that its step-up transformer taps were modified per the Transmission Operator’s documentation in accordance with Requirement R6. The Generator Owner shall have evidence that it notified its associated Transmission Operator when it could not comply with the Transmission Operator’s step-up transformer tap specifications in accordance with Requirement R6, Part 6.1.

C. Compliance

1. Compliance Monitoring Process:

1.1. Compliance Enforcement Authority:

As defined in the NERC Rules of Procedure, “Compliance Enforcement Authority” refers to NERC or the Regional Entity in their respective roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with the NERC Reliability Standards.

1.2. Evidence Retention:

The following evidence retention periods identify the period of time an entity is required to retain specific evidence to demonstrate compliance. For instances where the evidence retention period specified below is shorter than the time since the last audit, the Compliance Enforcement Authority may ask an entity to provide other evidence to show that it was compliant for the full time period since the last audit.

The Generator Owner shall keep its latest version of documentation on its step-up and auxiliary transformers. The Generator Operator shall maintain all other evidence for the current and previous calendar year.

The Compliance Monitor shall retain any audit data for three years.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes:

“Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes” refers to the identification of the processes that will be used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of assessing performance or outcomes with the associated reliability standard.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information:

None.

Table of Compliance Elements

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R1	Real-time Operations	Medium	N/A	N/A	N/A	Unless exempted, the Generator Operator did not operate each generator connected to the interconnected transmission system in the automatic voltage control mode or in a different control mode as instructed by the Transmission Operator, and failed to provide the required notifications to Transmission Operator as identified in Requirement R1.

VAR-002-4.1 — Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R2	Real-time Operations	Medium	N/A	N/A	<p>The Generator Operator did not have a conversion methodology when it monitors voltage at a location different from the schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.</p>	<p>The Generator Operator did not maintain the voltage or Reactive Power schedule as instructed by the Transmission Operator and did not make the necessary notifications required by the Transmission Operator.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Generator Operator did not have an operating AVR, and the responsible entity did not use an alternative method for controlling voltage.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Generator Operator did not modify voltage when directed, and the responsible entity did not provide any explanation.</p>
R3	Real-time Operations	Medium	N/A	N/A	N/A	<p>The Generator Operator did not make the required notification within 30 minutes of the status change.</p>

VAR-002-4.1 — Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R4	Real-time Operations	Medium	N/A	N/A	N/A	The Generator Operator did not make the required notification within 30 minutes of becoming aware of the capability change.
R5	Real-time Operations	Lower	N/A	N/A	The Generator Owner failed to provide its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner one of the types of data specified in Requirement R5 Parts 5.1.1, 5.1.2, and 5.1.3.	The Generator Owner failed to provide to its associated Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner two or more of the types of data specified in Requirement R5 Parts 5.1.1, 5.1.2, and 5.1.3.

VAR-002-4.1 — Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

R #	Time Horizon	VRF	Violation Severity Levels			
			Lower VSL	Moderate VSL	High VSL	Severe VSL
R6	Real-time Operations	Lower	N/A	N/A	N/A	<p>The Generator Owner did not ensure the tap changes were made according the Transmission Operator’s specifications.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>The Generator Owner failed to perform the tap changes, and the Generator Owner did not provide technical justification for why it could not comply with the Transmission Operator specifications.</p>

D. Regional Variances

None.

E. Interpretations

None.

F. Associated Documents

None.

Version History

Version	Date	Action	Change Tracking
1	5/1/2006	Added "(R2)" to the end of levels on non-compliance 2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.3.2, and 2.4.3.	July 5, 2006
1a	12/19/2007	Added Appendix 1 – Interpretation of R1 and R2 approved by BOT on August 1, 2007	Revised
1a	1/16/2007	In Section A.2., Added "a" to end of standard number. Section F: added "1."; and added date.	Errata
1.1a	10/29/2008	BOT adopted errata changes; updated version number to "1.1a"	Errata
1.1b	3/3/2009	Added Appendix 2 – Interpretation of VAR-002-1.1a approved by BOT on February 10, 2009	Revised
2b	4/16/2013	Revised R1 to address an Interpretation Request. Also added previously approved VRFs, Time Horizons and VSLs. Revised R2 to address consistency issue with VAR-001-2, R4. FERC Order issued approving VAR-002-2b.	Revised
3	5/5/2014	Revised under Project 2013-04 to address outstanding Order 693 directives.	Revised
3	5/7/2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
3	8/1/2014	Approved by FERC in docket RD14-11-000	
4	8/27/2014	Revised under Project 2014-01 to clarify applicability of Requirements to	Revised

VAR-002-4.1 — Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

		BES dispersed power producing resources.	
4	11/13/2014	Adopted by NERC Board of Trustees	
4	5/29/2015	FERC Letter Order in Docket No. RD15-3-000 approving VAR-002-4	
4.1	June 14, 2017	Project 2016-EPR-02 errata recommendations	Errata
4.1	August 10, 2017	Adopted by the NERC Board of Trustees	Errata
4.1	September 26, 2017	FERC Letter Order issued approving VAR-002-4.1 RD17-7-000	

Guidelines and Technical Basis

Rationale:

During development of this standard, text boxes were embedded within the standard to explain the rationale for various parts of the standard. Upon BOT approval, the text from the rationale text boxes was moved to this section.

Rationale for R1:

This requirement has been maintained due to the importance of running a unit with its automatic voltage regulator (AVR) in service and in either voltage controlling mode or the mode instructed by the TOP. However, the requirement has been modified to allow for testing, and the measure has been updated to include some of the evidence that can be used for compliance purposes.

Rationale for R2:

Requirement R2 details how a Generator Operator (GOP) operates its generator(s) to provide voltage support and when the GOP is expected to notify the Transmission Operator (TOP). In an effort to remove prescriptive notification requirements for the entire continent, the VAR-002-3 standard drafting team (SDT) opted to allow each TOP to determine the notification requirements for each of its respective GOPs based on system requirements. Additionally, a new Part 2.3 has been added to detail that each GOP may monitor voltage by using its existing facility equipment.

Conversion Methodology: There are many ways to convert the voltage schedule from one voltage level to another. Some entities may choose to develop voltage regulation curves for their transformers; others may choose to do a straight ratio conversion; others may choose an entirely different methodology. All of these methods have technical challenges, but the studies performed by the TOP, which consider N-1 and credible N-2 contingencies, should compensate for the error introduced by these methodologies, and the TOP possesses the authority to direct the GOP to modify its output if its performance is not satisfactory. During a significant system event, such as a voltage collapse, even a generation unit in automatic voltage control that controls based on the low-side of the generator step-up transformer should see the event on the low-side of the generator step-up transformer and respond accordingly.

Voltage Schedule Tolerances: The bandwidth that accompanies the voltage target in a voltage schedule should reflect the anticipated fluctuation in voltage at the GOP's Facility during normal operations and be based on the TOP's assessment of N-1 and credible N-2 system contingencies. The voltage schedule's bandwidth should not be confused with the control dead-band that is programmed into a GOP's AVR control system, which should be adjusting the AVR prior to reaching either end of the voltage schedule's bandwidth.

Rationale for R3:

This requirement has been modified to limit the notifications required when an AVR goes out of service and quickly comes back in service. Notifications of this type of status change provide little to no benefit to reliability. Thirty (30) minutes have been built into the requirement to allow a GOP time to resolve an issue before having to notify the TOP of a status change. The requirement has

VAR-002-4.1 Application Guidelines

also been amended to remove the sub-requirement to provide an estimate for the expected duration of the status change.

Rationale for R4:

This requirement has been bifurcated from the prior version VAR-002-2b Requirement R3. This requirement allows GOPs to report reactive capability changes after they are made aware of the change. The current standard requires notification as soon as the change occurs, but many GOPs are not aware of a reactive capability change until it has taken place.

Rationale for Exclusion in R4:

VAR-002 addresses control and management of reactive resources and provides voltage control where it has an impact on the BES. For dispersed power producing resources as identified in Inclusion I4, Requirement R4 should not apply at the individual generator level due to the unique characteristics and small scale of individual dispersed power producing resources. In addition, other standards such as proposed TOP-003 require the Generator Operator to provide Real-time data as directed by the TOP.

Rationale for R5:

This requirement and corresponding measure have been maintained due to the importance of having accurate tap settings. If the tap setting is not properly set, then the VARs available from that unit can be affected. The prior version of VAR-002-2b, Requirement R4.1.4 (the +/- voltage range with step-change in % for load-tap changing transformers) has been removed. The percentage information was not needed because the tap settings, ranges and impedance are required. Those inputs can be used to calculate the step-change percentage if needed.

Rationale for Exclusion in R5:

The Transmission Operator and Transmission Planner only need to review tap settings, available fixed tap ranges, impedance data and the +/- voltage range with step-change in % for load-tap changing transformers on main generator step-up unit transformers which connect dispersed power producing resources identified through Inclusion I4 of the Bulk Electric System definition to their transmission system. The dispersed power producing resources individual generator transformers are not intended, designed or installed to improve voltage performance at the point of interconnection. In addition, the dispersed power producing resources individual generator transformers have traditionally been excluded from Requirement R4 and R5 of VAR-002-2b (similar requirements are R5 and R6 for VAR-002-3), as they are not used to improve voltage performance at the point of interconnection.

Rationale for R6:

This requirement and corresponding measure have been maintained due to the importance of having accurate tap settings. If the tap setting is not properly set, then the VARs available from that unit can be affected.

Appendix VAR-002-4.1-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard VAR-002-4.1 – Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

This appendix establishes specific provisions for the application of the standard in Québec. Provisions of the standard and of this appendix must be read jointly for comprehension and interpretation purposes. Where the standard and appendix differ, the appendix shall prevail.

A. Introduction

1. **Title:** No specific provisions.
2. **Number:** No specific provisions.
3. **Purpose:** No specific provisions.
4. **Applicability:**

The Facilities subject to this Standard are the Facilities of the Main Transmission System (RTP).

5. **Effective date:**

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 5.1. Adoption of the standard by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.2. Adoption of this appendix by the Régie de l'énergie: | Month xx, 20xx |
| 5.3. Effective date of the standard and
of this appendix in Québec: | Month xx, 20xx |

B. Requirements and Measures

Specific provision applicable to Requirement R2:

If the Generator Operator is also a Transmission Owner, replace only the text of Requirement R2, without changing parts 2.1 to 2.3, with the following:

- R2. Unless exempted by the Transmission Operator, each Generator Operator shall maintain the generator voltage or Reactive Power schedule³ (within each generating Facility's capabilities⁴) provided by the Transmission Operator at the points of interconnection of its system to the Main Transmission System, or otherwise shall meet the conditions of notification for deviations from the voltage or Reactive Power schedule provided by the Transmission Operator.

Specific provision applicable to requirements R5 and R6:

Generator Owners are not required to comply with Requirement R5, and parts 5.1, 5.1.1, 5.1.2 and 5.1.3, or Requirement R6 and Part 6.1 given that the Transmission Operator will provide directives based on the voltage to be maintained on the transmission system.

C. Compliance

1. **Compliance Monitoring Process**

- 1.1. **Compliance Enforcement Authority**

In Québec, "Compliance Enforcement Authority" means the Régie de l'énergie in its roles of monitoring and enforcing compliance with respect to the Reliability Standard and to this appendix.

- 1.2. **Evidence Retention**

Appendix VAR-002-4.1-QC-1

Specific provisions applicable in Québec for standard VAR-002-4.1 – Generator Operation for Maintaining Network Voltage Schedules

No specific provisions.

1.3. Compliance Monitoring and Assessment Processes

The Régie de l'énergie establishes the monitoring processes used to evaluate data or information for the purpose of determining compliance or non-compliance with the Reliability Standard and with this appendix.

1.4. Additional Compliance Information

No specific provisions.

Table of Compliance Elements

No specific provisions.

D. Regional Variances

No specific provisions.

E. Interpretations

No specific provisions.

F. Associated Documents

No specific provisions.

Guidelines and Technical Basis

No specific provisions.

Version history

Version	Date	Action	Change tracking
1	Month xx, 20xx	New appendix	New